

# The International Journal of Protected Areas and Conservation



# Developing capacity for a protected planet

Issue 25.1 May 2019









#### IUCN PROTECTED AREA DEFINITION, MANAGEMENT CATEGORIES AND GOVERNANCE TYPES

#### IUCN defines a protected area as:

A clearly defined geographical space, recognised, dedicated and managed, through legal or other effective means, to achieve the long-term conservation of nature with associated ecosystem services and cultural values.

The definition is expanded by six management categories (one with a sub-division), summarized below.

- **Ia Strict nature reserve:** Strictly protected for biodiversity and also possibly geological/ geomorphological features, where human visitation, use and impacts are controlled and limited to ensure protection of the conservation values.
- **Ib Wilderness area:** Usually large unmodified or slightly modified areas, retaining their natural character and influence, without permanent or significant human habitation, protected and managed to preserve their natural condition.
- Il National park: Large natural or near-natural areas protecting large-scale ecological processes with characteristic species and ecosystems, which also have environmentally and culturally compatible spiritual, scientific, educational, recreational and visitor opportunities.
- **III Natural monument or feature:** Areas set aside to protect a specific natural monument, which can be a landform, sea mount, marine cavern, geological feature such as a cave, or a living feature such as an ancient grove.
- IV Habitat/species management area: Areas to protect particular species or habitats, where management reflects this priority. Many will need regular, active interventions to meet the needs of particular species or habitats, but this is not a requirement of the category.
- V Protected landscape or seascape: Where the interaction of people and nature over time has produced a distinct character with significant ecological, biological, cultural and scenic value: and where safeguarding the integrity of this interaction is vital to protecting and sustaining the area and its associated nature conservation and other values.
- VI Protected areas with sustainable use of natural resources: Areas which conserve ecosystems, together with associated cultural values and traditional natural resource management systems. Generally large, mainly in a natural condition, with a proportion under sustainable

natural resource management and where low-level nonindustrial natural resource use compatible with nature conservation is seen as one of the main aims.

The category should be based around the primary management objective(s), which should apply to at least three-quarters of the protected area – the 75 per cent rule.

The management categories are applied with a typology of governance types – a description of who holds authority and responsibility for the protected area.

IUCN defines four governance types.

- **Governance by government**: Federal or national ministry/ agency in charge; sub-national ministry/agency in charge; government-delegated management (e.g. to NGO)
- Shared governance: Collaborative management (various degrees of influence); joint management (pluralist management board; transboundary management (various levels across international borders)
- **Private governance**: By individual owner; by non-profit organisations (NGOs, universities, cooperatives); by for-profit organisations (individuals or corporate)
- Governance by indigenous peoples and local communities: Indigenous peoples' conserved areas and territories; community conserved areas – declared and run by local communities

For more information on the IUCN definition, categories and governance type see the 2008 *Guidelines for applying protected area management categories* which can be downloaded at: www.iucn.org/pa\_categories

#### IUCN WCPA'S BEST PRACTICE PROTECTED AREA GUIDELINES SERIES

IUCN-WCPA's Best Practice Protected Area Guidelines are the world's authoritative resource for protected area managers. Involving collaboration among specialist practitioners dedicated to supporting better implementation in the field, they distil learning and advice drawn from across IUCN. Applied in the field, they are building institutional and individual capacity to manage protected area systems effectively, equitably and sustainably, and to cope with the myriad of challenges faced in practice. They also assist national governments, protected area agencies, nongovernmental organisations, communities and private sector partners to meet their commitments and goals, and especially the Convention on Biological Diversity's Programme of Work on Protected Areas.

A full set of guidelines is available at: www.iucn.org/pa\_guidelines Complementary resources are available at: www.cbd.int/protected/tools/ Contribute to developing capacity for a Protected Planet at: www.protectedplanet.net/



PARKS is published electronically twice a year by IUCN's World Commission on Protected Areas. For more information see: parksjournal.com

PARKS is published to strengthen international collaboration in protected area development and management by:

- exchanging information on practical management issues, especially learning from case studies of applied ideas;
- serving as a global forum for discussing new and emerging issues that relate to protected areas;
- promoting understanding of the values and benefits derived from protected areas to communities, visitors, business etc;
- ensuring that protected areas fulfill their primary role in nature conservation while addressing critical issues such as ecologically sustainable development, social justice and climate change adaptation and mitigation;
- changing and improving protected area support and behaviour through use of information provided in the journal; and
- promoting IUCN's work on protected areas.
- <u>Managing Editor</u>: *Marc Hockings, Australia*: Emeritus Professor, University of Queensland; IUCN WCPA Vice-Chair for Science and Management of Protected Areas; Honorary Fellow, UNEP-World Conservation Monitoring Centre

<u>Co-Editors:</u> Helen Newing, Sarah Casson, Bas Verschuuren, Olivier Chassot, John Waithaka; Statistical co-editor Allan Lisle

### **Editorial Board Members**

#### IUCN

- *Trevor Sandwith, Switzerland*: Director, IUCN Global Protected Areas Programme
- Dr Tom Brooks, Switzerland: Head, IUCN Science & Knowledge Unit

#### **IUCN-WCPA Steering Committee Members**

- Cyril Komos, USA: Vice President for Policy, WILD Foundation; IUCN WCPA Vice-Chair for World Heritage
- Dr Kathy MacKinnon, UK: Chair IUCN WCPA; Former Lead Biodiversity Specialist at the World Bank
- Dr John Waithaka, Kenya: Regional Vice-Chair for Eastern and Southern Africa

#### **External Experts**

- Dr Ernesto Enkerlin Hoeflich, Mexico: Dean for Sustainable Development at Monterrey Tech; former President of the National Commission on Natural Protected Areas of Mexico, former Chair of IUCN WCPA
- Nikita (Nik) Lopoukhine, Canada: Former Director General of National Parks, Parks Canada; former Chair of IUCN WCPA
- Dr Thora Amend, Peru: Advisor for protected areas and people in development contexts; member of IUCN's WCPA, TILCEPA and Protected Landscape Task Force

Professor B.C. Choudhury, India: Retired Scientist

(Endangered Species Management Specialist), Wildlife Institute of India; Coordinator of IUCN's National Committee in India

- Dr Helen Newing, UK: Formerly of the Durrell Institute of Conservation and Ecology (DICE), University of Kent
- Dr Kent Redford, USA: Former Director of the Wildlife Conservation Society (WCS) Institute and Vice President, Conservation Strategies at the WCS in New York; principal at Archipelago Consulting
- Sue Stolton, UK: Partner Equilibrium Research, IUCN WCPA
- Dr Bas Verschuuren, The Netherlands: Associate Researcher: Department of Sociology of Development and Change, Wageningen University ; Co-Chair, IUCN WCPA Specialist Group on Cultural and Spiritual Values of Protected Areas
- Dr Eduard Müller, Costa Rica: Rector, Universidad para la Cooperación Internacional
- Sarah Casson, USA: WILD Foundation; IUCN WCPA Wilderness Specialist Group Manager
- Olivier Chassot, Costa Rica: Executive Director, MigraMar

**Thanks to**: Mariart for layout advice and front cover picture production. Patricia Odio Yglesias and Sarah LaBrasca for abstract translations. Caroline Snow for proofreading. And to all the reviewers who so diligently helped in the production of this issue.



The designation of geographical entities in this journal, and the presentation of the material, do not imply the expression of any opinion whatsoever on the part of IUCN concerning the legal status of any country, territory, or area, or of its authorities, or concerning the delimitation of its frontiers or boundaries.

The views expressed in this publication do not necessarily reflect those of IUCN.

IUCN does not take any responsibility for errors or omissions occurring in the translations in this document whose original version is in English.

Published by:	IUCN, Gland, Switzerland						
Copyright:	© 2019 International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources						
	Reproduction of this publication for educational or other non-commercial purposes is authorized without prior written permission from the copyright holder provided the source is fully acknowledged.						
	Reproduction of this publication for resale or other commercial purposes is prohibited without prior written permission of the copyright holder.						
Citation:	IUCN WCPA (2019). <i>PARKS. The International Journal of Protected Areas and Conservation,</i> Volume 25.1, Gland, Switzerland: IUCN.						
ISSN:	ISSN 2411-2119 (Online), ISSN 0960-233X (Print)						
DOI:	10.2305/IUCN.CH.2019.PARKS-25-1en						
Cover photo:	Manaslu Conservation Area, Nepal © Hugo van Zyl						
Editing:	Marc Hockings, Sarah Casson, Helen Newing , Bas Verschuuren, John Waithaka, Olivier Chassot						
Layout by:	Marc Hockings, IUCN WCPA						
Available from:	IUCN (International Union for Conservation of Nature) Global Programme on Protected Areas Rue Mauverney 28 1196 Gland Switzerland Tel +41 22 999 0000 Fax +41 22 999 0002 parksjournal.com iucn.org/theme/protected-areas/publications/parks-journal						



# PARKS: THE INTERNATIONAL JOURNAL OF PROTECTED AREAS AND CONSERVATION

Edited by Marc Hockings, Emeritus Professor, University of Queensland; IUCN WCPA Vice-Chair for Science and Management of Protected Areas.

editor@parksjournal.com School of Earth and Environmental Sciences, University of Queensland, St Lucia, Queensland 4072, Australia.

# CONTENTS

Book review	1	07
-------------	---	----



## **EDITORIAL**

Marc Hockings, Managing Editor

Already a third of 2019 has passed us by and increasingly the minds of many conservationists around the world are focussing on the direction we will take to biodiversity conservation in a post-2020 world. Decisions on post-2020 targets will be taken at the 15th Meeting of the Conference of the Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD) in China in October 2020. The IUCN Council and the WCPA Beyond the Aichi Targets Task Force are both giving attention to this question.

In the meantime, there is much still to be done to address current targets under the CBD Strategic Plan. Much of this effort is being directed through the CBD Global Partnership on Aichi Target 11. This partnership of over 40 governmental and NGO members is working to facilitate effective implementation and the achievement of Target 11.

Both necessary actions in advance of COP15 and the post-2020 targets will be a focus of discussions at the meeting of the WCPA Steering Committee this month in Kenya. Further opportunities for discussion of these important issues will be at the Third Latin American Congress on Protected Areas in Lima, Peru in October this year and at the IUCN World Conservation Congress that will be held in Marseille, France in June, 2020.

Turning to this issue of *PARKS* , there are a number of papers that examine people's relationships and

interactions with protected areas. Firstly Yilmaz and colleagues consider the harmonious interactions between mobile pastoralists and nature in the rangelands that they traverse. They discuss some of the challenges that protected areas have presented to this form of land use and how to mitigate conflict and promote collaboration between protected area managers and mobile pastoralists. The issue of promoting positive interactions between people and protected areas is also taken up in the paper by Allendorf and her co-authors who surveys of villagers in Nepal and Myanmar to examine the impacts of working at different spatial scales in managing park-people interactions.

Adewumi and colleagues consider the approaches to collaborative management of protected areas in Germany, Japan, Nigeria and Vietnam. Out of this comparative study, they draw a number of lessons and challenges that are faced in establishing an effective collaborative management regime. Another comparative study by Van Zyl, Kinghorn and Emerton looks at affordability of national park entrance fees in a global review. Their findings could usefully underpin a discussion in many countries around costs and benefits of protected areas. The relatively low level of entrance fees in many countries (Australian national parks come out as most affordable) needs to be considered in relation to the well-understood shortfall in resources for effective management that exists around the world.

Van Cuong and colleagues document the complex interactions between buffer zone development, water management and fire management in a wetland park in Vietnam. They chart first, the decline in waterbird abundance and diversity along with environmental degradation in response to retention of flood waters in the park as a fire management strategy. Then they show how an improved water management regime has restored wetland condition and a recovery in waterbird diversity and abundance. Mansourian, Walters and Gonzales examined governance challenges implementing forest landscape restoration in Canada, Ghana and New Caledonia and propose solutions to issues of overlapping jurisdictions, inter-institutional relationships, tenure rights conflict, and stakeholder power dynamics.

This issue of *PARKS* sees the introduction of Short Communications to the journal. These contributions up to 2000 words are reviewed internally by Editors and can focus on a specific case study that illustrates an issue of general interest or a short commentary on a protected area issue.



## MOBILE PASTORALISM AND PROTECTED AREAS: CONFLICT, COLLABORATION AND CONNECTIVITY

### Engin Yılmaz<sup>1</sup>, Liza Zogib<sup>2</sup>, Pablo Urivelarrea<sup>3</sup> and Semiha Demirbaş Çağlayan<sup>1</sup>

Corresponding author: engin@bican.net

- <sup>1</sup> Yolda Initiative, Atatürk Bulvarı, 105/604, Çankaya, Ankara, Turkey
- <sup>2</sup> DiversEarth, Chemin de la Roche du Ciel 8, 1188 St. George, Switzerland
- <sup>3</sup> Trashumancia y Naturaleza, Apdo. 33, Cabezón de la Sal. 39500 Cantabria, Spain

#### ABSTRACT

For thousands of years, mobile pastoralist communities have been moving through the rangelands with their herds in search of forage and water, making the most of scarce resources. This traditional form of livestock husbandry has persisted over the centuries because of its harmonious interaction with nature. Yet ironically the advent of protected areas has become a real threat to the lives and livelihoods of mobile pastoralists in many parts of the world. In this paper, the authors consider the many benefits of mobile pastoralism, in particular those related to movement. Pastoral migration routes move through and around protected areas, forging ecological corridors between different habitats, avoiding isolation and fragmentation. As a case in point, the authors look at the network of Spanish drove roads, with new data on the overlap between these routes and protected areas and other areas of high biodiversity. This paper raises some serious questions for reflection by the protected area community vis-à-vis the practice of mobile pastoralism. From basic human rights issues to acknowledging the services pastoralists provide, readers are invited to reflect on an issue that is not clear-cut and requires much more dialogue, as well as concerted action to mitigate conflict and promote collaboration.

Key words: mobile pastoralism, protected areas, rangelands, OECM, connectivity, migration routes

#### **INTRODUCTION**

Mobile pastoralism and protected areas meet and interact in many different ways. Sometimes this meeting is complementary, or symbiotic. Other times it causes conflict. Overgrazing is an oft-cited threat to protected areas, yet in many places the practice of mobile pastoralism has been shown to be beneficial for biodiversity and in principle can provide many benefits to society at large. This paper looks at some of the conflicts and enquires into the opportunities for these two diverse practices to work together for nature conservation.

We use the term 'mobile pastoralism' to encompass the varying ways that people move through the landscape with their livestock. The word pastoralism derives from the Latin *pastoralis* meaning 'of herdsmen, of shepherds'<sup>1</sup> and refers to raising livestock (Salzman, 2002), mostly domesticated herbivore species. It is an *extensive* livestock rearing strategy and way of living

that occurs in the world's rangelands and is entirely different in essence to *intensive* livestock production systems that emerged in the last century (McGahey et al., 2014). We add 'mobile' to differentiate from sedentary pastoralism, which is conducted from a permanent location. Mobile pastoralism therefore emphasises the mobility of people and their livestock in search of forage and water as the core feature of the practice.

There are three main forms of mobile pastoralism: nomadic, semi-nomadic and transhumant. The differences are mostly based on whether or not the entire family or community moves with the herd. In nomadic or semi-nomadic pastoralism, the entire family or community moves, but in the case of transhumance only a part of the community or an individual moves during the migration period while the rest of the family or community remains at a home base (Chatty, 1973). These definitions are not static. Mobile pastoralism has always been, and remains, an adaptive livestock management and livelihood practice. If and when environmental and cultural conditions change, the communities adjust accordingly (Bhasin, 2011). The mobility is not occasional but a repeated seasonal movement to pastures depending on the availability of forage and water, which is strongly linked to climatic conditions and changes (Salzman, 2002; Coughenour, 2008). It is a millennia-old survival strategy to ensure the sustainable use of diffuse and scattered resources of rangeland ecosystems in arid, semi-arid and mountain regions (Biber-Klemm & Rass, 2008), following temporal and spatial patterns.

Another common feature of mobile pastoralism is its reliance on common property systems, also devised to efficiently manage the lands and share risks, as a community, arising due to environmental challenges such as drought (Niamir-Fuller, 1999). Changes in land use therefore – including for nature conservation – manifestly impacts the lives of pastoralists all over the world. The practice of mobile pastoralists relies on a constant interaction and interdependency with the landscape and this has led to a rich body of traditional ecological knowledge, which in turn has maintained their lifestyle, as well as the rangeland ecosystems they rely on, for thousands of years.

The advent of formal protected area systems over the past century is one of the big changes in land use that has affected the mobility of pastoralists. In some regions the difficulties are such that they have resulted in nature conservation being cited as one of the key threats to the lives and livelihoods of pastoralists. FAO's Pastoral Knowledge Hub for South Asia states:

"Main pastoralist issues in the region include the intensification of agricultural production and the collapse of agro-pastoral systems, the disruption of mobility routes and the land acquisition processes associated with industrialization and nature conservation."<sup>2</sup>

Conversely, many protected areas cite overgrazing as a key threat that needs to be tackled, with some states opting for hard-line strategies using relocation or settlement, which is rarely welcomed by pastoralist communities and often has undesirable results for the environment (Studley, 2019; Homewood & Rodgers, 1984). Solutions are not clear-cut and protected areas thinking has greatly changed in recent years, but what is still apparent is that communication and collaboration between mobile pastoralists and protected area administrations remain poor at best.

In this paper, we examine these issues firstly by looking at some examples of conflict between protected areas and mobile pastoralists. We then outline some of the proven benefits of mobile pastoralism based on work within the Mediterranean Consortium for Nature and Culture<sup>3</sup> and the Roads Less Travelled Global Initiative<sup>4</sup> in order to show why a new dialogue is necessary between these two practices that both aim to maintain healthy landscapes. We subsequently look in more detail at key issues of connectivity and the potential role of mobile pastoralism in maintaining and enhancing corridors between areas of high biodiversity (a major threat to protected area systems worldwide) by looking at Spain's system of drovers' roads. We end by considering needs and opportunities for a much better collaboration going forwards.

#### MOBILE PASTORALISM AND PROTECTED AREAS: CONFLICT AND COLLABORATION

As mobile pastoralism is mainly practised in remote areas with low population density, pastoral lands and territories are often a retreat for wildlife and have a distinct biodiversity. This makes them prime targets for legal protection (Biber-Klemm & Rass, 2008). Some pastoral lands are amongst the most emblematic 'conservation areas' in the world (e.g. Serengeti).

The general view among conservationists has been that mobile pastoralism is environmentally harmful and thus incompatible with nature conservation. Mobile pastoral communities were and still are in many cases perceived as a threat to biodiversity and therefore the adoption of protection measures against these traditional land-users is perceived as required (Boyd et al., 1999; Sullivan & Homewood, 2003).

Here we have two very different land use strategies: Mobile pastoralism as a millennia-old livelihood strategy that makes the most of marginal lands and that is grounded on understanding the landscape and keeping it healthy; and protected areas as a more recent strategy to achieve the 'long-term conservation of nature' (Dudley, 2008), otherwise to maintain healthy landscapes and seascapes. In essence these two strategies have a very similar aim.

However, the establishment and management of protected areas has been a significant driver in the decrease of mobile pastoralism by restricting mobility and land grabbing – dispossession and appropriation by either expropriation or privatisation – of lands and resources used traditionally and collectively by mobile pastoralists (Toutain et al., 2004). Grabbing implies the transfer of ownership, user rights or control over rangelands and resources that were once owned or managed communally by mobile pastoralists (Fairhead et al., 2012). Over the past decades, there has been a dramatic increase in the number and extent of protected areas established globally (UNEP-WCMC and IUCN, 2016a). Yet the commitments under the Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD) to expand the global network of protected areas so far have been achieved mostly with a preventive and alienating approach by states, violating the rights of mobile pastoralists as has been the case for many other indigenous and local communities (Ykhanbai et al., 2014; Toutain et al., 2004).

When protected areas are established on traditional pastoral rangelands a number of situations can occur:

• Mobile pastoralism continues within the protected area and/or buffer zone (e.g. Monfragüe National Park, Spain)

- Mobile pastoralism continues within the buffer zone only (e.g. Al Shouf Biosphere Reserve, Lebanon)
- Mobile pastoralism continues outside the protected area and/or buffer zone (e.g. Serengeti National Park, Tanzania)
- Mobile pastoralism is stopped, pastoralists are relocated to other areas (e.g. Rajaji National Park, India)
- Mobile pastoralism is stopped, pastoralists are settled and encouraged to adopt new livelihoods (e.g. Hoh Xil World Heritage Site, China)

The above options are mainly decided by protected area authorities.

Because the landscape benefits of mobile pastoralism have been little understood or acknowledged, and because protected areas have often been superimposed



Restrictions to mobility is a significant driver in the decrease of mobile pastoralism (© Barış Koca)

on traditional rangelands with very little or no consultation, the historical relationship between protected areas and mobile pastoralists has, generally speaking, been one of conflict.

In India, the state policy on forests has reaped havoc amongst forest dependent communities (Agrawal, 2014), many of whom are mobile pastoralists and there have been mass evictions from protected areas since 2002 (Ykhanbai et al., 2014). The Van Gujjar tribe of Rajaji National Park (Uttarkhand and Uttar Pradesh) is a pertinent example of the conflict. The Van Gujjars are the only Muslim forest dependent community in the country. Their official classification as a people in the states of Uttarkhand and Uttar Pradesh is 'Other Backward Classes'. Their wintering sites lie within the National Park boundaries and their "finely tuned transhumance helps to regenerate vegetation in the upper Himalayan stretches" (Agrawal, 2014). Thousands of Van Gujjars have been relocated far from their traditional lands and it is claimed that remaining families in the park are being "harassed and beaten by RNP (Rajaji National Park) officials and police..." (Agrawal, 2014).

Similarly in the recently inscribed World Heritage property of Qinghai Hoh Xil, China, many of the traditional Tibetan herders have been evicted and resettled to work in factories. The management of this World Heritage property on the Tibetan plateau falls under the two administrations of Hoh Xil and Sanjiangyuan National Nature Reserves. Chinese legislation for Nature Reserves prohibits activities such as grazing within park boundaries (Studley, 2019; Stolton & Dudley, in press). Yet the Tibetan herders have always lived in harmony with their natural environment and for the past 30 years have been more formally spearheading species and landscape protection there (Lafitte, 2017).

Some of the world's most emblematic protected areas have been established on rangelands, which for millennia have been home to mobile pastoralists. The Serengeti in Tanzania is a case in point. Heavy-handed evictions of the Maasai from their ancestral lands in the name of nature conservation have led to years of continued clashes (Tanzania Natural Resource Forum, 2011), and heightened conflict with wildlife. Further, after initial evictions from the protected areas, many Maasai have been evicted once again in order to make way for luxury game hunting (The Ecologist, 2015).

Al Shouf Nature Reserve and UNESCO Biosphere Reserve in Lebanon is home to a quarter of the remaining Lebanese Cedar forests, some of which are

over 2,000 years old. When the Nature Reserve was established in 1996, an old migration route for mobile pastoralists still ran through the middle of it. In accordance with the protected area thinking of the time, the protected area's management stopped the grazing within the park boundaries, which caused considerable conflict. In time the incidence of forest fires became more important due to the lack of grazing and management decided it was time to re-build relationships with local shepherds. Today grazing is permitted in the buffer zone and development zones of the Shouf Biosphere Reserve and park staff look forward to new collaborations and less conflict (Personal communications with the manager of Al Shouf Nature Reserve and mobile pastoralist shepherds, 25-26 January 2017).

The above incidents were impossible in the case of Monfragüe National Park in Spain because of the longstanding legislation that has protected the country's drove roads since the 13<sup>th</sup> century. As such when the protected area was established, first as a Natural Park in 1979, then as a Special Protection Area for birds in 1991, subsequently a UNESCO Biosphere Reserve in 2003 and finally a National Park in 2007, there was no question as to what to do with the transhumant shepherds who for centuries have used the cañada that runs through it. Today, both the transhumants and the park staff talk of mutual understanding and a collaborative relationship (Personal communications with the manager of Monfragüe National Park and mobile pastoralist shepherds, 6 March 2017). Interestingly Jesus Garzon, who established the Natural Park in 1979, went on to be one of the key propagators of the long distance transhumance renaissance in Spain, arguing that transhumance in Spain is a necessity for the environment.

As is the case with the Monfragüe National Park example, the experience of the global nature conservation movement over the last few decades has resulted in a shift towards recognising that humans, with their cultural diversity, are an integral component of ecosystems (Nakashima et al., 2012). This recognition has been supported by a growing body of evidence on the strong linkage between the maintenance of mobile pastoralism and the protection of rangeland biodiversity considering particularly that rangeland landscapes account for between one quarter and one half of the world land area and are dependent on herbivore action for their maintenance which is mostly ensured by pastoral grazing management (McGahey et al., 2014).

Whether inside or outside protected areas, the many benefits for the environment related to mobile pastoralism can no longer be ignored as more literature and concrete examples emerge (Niamir-Fuller et al., 2012). The migration routes used by mobile pastoralists play a critical role in habitat connectivity (Manzano-Baena & Salguero-Herrera, 2018) and if properly acknowledged could certainly provide protected areas with some bio-cultural solutions to the major problems of fragmentation (Ervin et al., 2010) they currently face. The following section of the paper looks at benefits specific to biodiversity, and then considers the scale of pastoral mobility's role in terms of connectivity.

#### THE BENEFITS OF MOBILE PASTORALISM FOR BIODIVERSITY

Rangeland ecosystems in arid, semi-arid and mountain regions encompass a wide range of vegetation formations: grassland with or without shrub, bush or woodland cover, savanna woodlands. These systems are the product of continual disturbance through patchy and unpredictable rainfall, fire, grazing, browsing and physical disturbance (Homewood, 2004). In particular, temporal variability shapes virtually all ecological processes in arid and semi-arid rangelands (Hobbs et al., 2008a). Due to insufficient rainfall to sustain agriculture, pastoralism has offered the only sustainable way to turn sunlight into food for people in these areas (Hobbs et al., 2008b).

In response to environmental variabilities and unpredictability in rangeland ecosystems, adaptability, flexibility and opportunism have characterised the evolution of mobile pastoralism and form the basis of their socio-ecological resilience (Niamir-Fuller, 1999; Coughenour, 2008). Moreover it is mobile pastoralists who have been a major agent in the evolution of rangeland ecosystems for thousands of years (McGahey et al., 2014; Reid et al., 2015). Particularly their mobility and the common property systems they depend on have allowed them to access and conserve forage and water resources that are unevenly distributed and vary over time (Reid et al., 2008).

Mobile pastoralists access the complex resources of landscapes, including those that are rare or ephemeral, by moving (Reid et al., 2008). These movements are



Mobile pastoralists, Al Shouf Biosphere Reserve, Lebanon © Marc Hockings

analogous in spatial and temporal scales to a wild herbivore species' movements (Reid et al., 2008; Galvin, 2008; Manzano-Baena & Casas, 2010) and they have very similar effects on ecosystems (Root-Bernstein & Svenning, 2017; Avgar & Fryxell, 2014).

As is the case with wild herbivores, domesticated herbivores exert numerous effects on plant communities and ecosystems (Coughenour, 2008). Among them a major beneficial effect is the generation of spatial heterogeneity (Coughenour, 2008; Manzano-Baena & Salguero-Herrera, 2018).

Certain frequencies and intensities of herbivory and thus movement are required to maintain plant species diversity and rangeland ecosystems that depend upon interactions between herbivores and a variety of resources (Coughenour, 2008). These resources can be assigned to categories such as vegetation types, elevation zones, plant functional groups, and water (Hobbs et al., 2008a).

Thus herbivores cope with temporal variability by exploiting resources that vary in quantity and quality over space and tracking a 'green wave' of nutritious vegetation (Hobbs et al., 2008a). Being central to the process of patch dynamics, this movement of herbivores between patches allows vegetation in previously visited patches to regenerate (Coughenour, 2008).

This is also the case at large spatial scales between seasonal ranges. The mobility of herbivores decreases the interaction frequency between animals and plants and allows the seasonally grazed ranges to recover (Hobbs et al., 2008b). When mobility is restricted, this not only leads to a decrease in heterogeneity but also leads to degradation (Hobbs et al., 2008a). For instance denying access to protected areas within the Ngorongoro Conservation Area in Tanzania, which has been inhabited by pastoralists and abundant wildlife for nearly two thousand years, forced Maasai pastoralists to consistently use the highlands. The diminished ability to compensate temporal variables led to the degradation of these highlands, which were traditionally used only seasonally (Galvin et al., 2008). Similarly, the impact of abandoning grazing in Gran Paradiso Natural Park in north-western Italy had significant effects on vegetation causing shrub encroachment and loss of rangelands and led to an unfavourable conservation status for grazing dependent species such as grassland birds (Laiolo et al., 2004).

Movements create a shifting mosaic of patches in different stages of regrowth or succession in the landscape. As a result, plant species diversity at

landscape scales is increased due to the occurrence of plant species with different life history strategies (growth rate, etc.) in disturbed versus recovered patches (Coughenour, 2008). Spatial heterogeneity with diverse plant species promotes diversity of species of different taxonomic groups by increasing available niche space and thus allowing more species to coexist, by providing shelter and refuges from adverse environmental conditions and by increasing the probability of speciation (Stein et al., 2014). This is not only the case for seasonal ranges but also for migration routes. For instance, a study comparing the routes still used by the domestic herbivores of mobile pastoralists versus abandoned routes in Spain suggests a significantly higher level of ant taxonomic diversity on the used routes. It was found that the used routes have a higher potential as functional reservoirs compared to those that were abandoned (Hevia et al., 2013). Particularly in environments where grazing is negligible or absent, the heterogeneity created by mobility along the migration routes creates local but crucial refugia for species (Manzano-Baena & Salguero-Herrera, 2018; Azcárate et al., 2013).

Movement is also central to the maintenance of a diversity of herbivores due to its involvement in grazing succession. Based on their body sizes and dietary differences (grazer, browser, etc.), they create suitable habitats for each other or they force each other to move on to new patches, which is essential for the succession of vegetation with low leaf:stem ratios (more stem, less leaf) or higher leaf:stem ratios (more leaf, less stem) (Coughenour, 2008). Large-bodied herbivores facilitate energy flow to smaller-bodied species by converting the vegetation with low leaf:stem ratio to a vegetation with a higher leaf:stem ratio which smaller-bodied herbivores utilise. Selectively foraging smaller-bodied herbivores may reduce the quality of the patch forcing less selective large-bodied herbivores to move on to new patches (Coughenour, 2008). For instance, the broad-scale separation of the ecosystem, whose shifting landscape mosaic was historically created by the dynamic interaction of pastoralists and elephants, has had important ecological implications for vegetation patterns in Amboseli National Park in Kenya. The distribution and abundance of wildlife at local and landscape scales has also been impacted since the forced removal of the Maasai and their livestock from the protected area. In the absence of livestock (grazers) forcing large-bodied herbivores to move on, the woodlands within the park collapsed, with elephants (browsers) preventing their regeneration. The collapse of the woodlands has resulted in a change of composition of other species and thus a loss of species, such as Coke's hartebeest (Alcelaphus buselaphus cokii)

and Gerenuk (*Litocranius walleri*). The decline of woodlands has led to significant shifts in primate distributions and has also certainly had implications for taxonomic groups such as ants, butterflies and birds (BurnSilver et al., 2008).

One other major effect involving movement is related to the role of herbivores in the dispersal of plants by epizoochory (the transportation of seeds attached to animal coats or hooves) and endozoochory (dispersal by ingestion and later defecation). Seeds attached to the fleece of livestock can be transported distances of up to several hundred kilometres in substantial numbers (Manzano & Malo, 2006). Another study reveals that a herd of 1,000 sheep can transport as many as 200 million ingested seeds along the migration routes between seasonal ranges during their 1,500 km migration with a mean dispersal distance of 40 km (Manzano-Baena & Salguero-Herrera, 2018). As the other processes resulting in the occurrence of long seed dispersal distances are ocean drift and tornadoes, dispersal by epizoochory and endozoochory may be critical mechanisms for plant species to escape the effects of global climate change (Manzano & Malo, 2006).

Herbivore movement also plays an important role in soil nutrient cycling, contributing to nutrition transfer across the landscape (Coughenour, 2008). of organic matter in rangeland Mineralisation ecosystems is to a large extent done by bacteria in the dung that dung beetles, ants and termites further help to incorporate into the soil (Manzano-Baena & Salguero -Herrera, 2018). Movement also allows a slow release of nitrogen and other nutrients, therefore preventing water pollution by leaching (Mekonnen & Hoekstra, 2012; Manzano-Baena & Salguero-Herrera, 2018).

The mobility of herbivores also has a direct effect on many scavenger species (Marinković & Karadzić, 1999; Xirouchakis & Nikolakakis, 2002; Mateo-Tomás, 2013), predators and insects with its role in nutrient cycles (Manzano-Baena & Salguero-Herrera, 2018). For instance vulture species, whose populations are in decline all over the world, typically rely on organic tissues from the carcasses of herbivores (Botha et al., 2017).

Additionally the movement of herbivores makes habitats less prone to wildfires by consumption of understory and their migration routes serve as natural firebreaks (Manzano-Baena & Salguero-Herrera, 2018). All these effects of herbivore movement contribute to an increase of ecosystem resilience by creating mosaics of patches with varied functions necessary to respond to changing environmental conditions (Coughenour, 2008). It is also through movement that this heterogeneity is maintained by the connectivity it ensures (Galvin, 2008), integrating these separated patches (structural connectivity) with the species diversity and movement and ecological processes they support (functional connectivity) into a single functioning system so the patches start to affect each other indirectly (Coughenour, 2008).

Herbivores and their movement therefore play a critical role in maintaining connectivity. In addition to structural and functional connectivity, considering the forced shifting of species' ranges to track suitable conditions due to climate change and other threatening processes (Worboys et al., 2016), migration routes also contribute to evolutionary connectivity for plant species.

As such, in light of declining wild herbivore populations and/or their increasing inability to migrate over long distances, mobile pastoralists and their herds provide substitution for these roles (Manzano & Malo, 2006). The spatial scale of the migration routes functioning as ecological corridors along with the amount of movement between patches determine the scale of ecological interactions. This is central to the structure and functioning of ecosystems and the ecological integrity of landscapes (Hobbs et al., 2008a; Galvin, 2008; Galvin, 2009).

This is also the case with protected areas and other sites of importance for biodiversity such as Key Biodiversity Areas (KBAs) and Important Bird Areas (IBAs). In many cases the landscapes that are so coveted by conservationists have been created and maintained over centuries by the presence and movement of mobile pastoralists and their domesticated herbivores (Biber-Klemm & Rass, 2008; Reid et al., 2015).

The migration routes which function as ecological corridors do not only connect protected areas to each other but also to the wider semi-natural and natural landscapes thereby avoiding their isolation and fragmentation (Manzano-Baena & Salguero-Herrera, 2018). The scale of the connectivity and ecological integrity ensured by the movement of herbivores, with the effects described above, is an integral component of the habitats and species that are conserved by protected areas particularly in arid and semi-arid ecosystems (Coughenour, 2008; Hobbs et al., 2008a).

#### **DROVE ROADS IN SPAIN**

In order to assess the scale of connectivity ensured by migration routes through a case study, we have conducted a mapping exercise in Spain<sup>5</sup>. The Spanish case provides us with a good example for several reasons: its rich biodiversity, habitat fragmentation and loss being a significant threat, a long history of mobile pastoralism and the availability of good documentation and cartography.

Spain is a semi-arid country hosting an estimated 85,000 species of animals and plants, representing 54 per cent of the total species inventoried in Europe and could represent more than 5 per cent of the species in the world. Of the total number of 2,233 species assessed in the country more than one fifth are considered threatened and at least 10 per cent are Near Threatened at European level (IUCN, 2013). Being a highly developed country, fragmentation along with habitat loss and degradation are the most significant threats identified for these species (IUCN, 2013).

Spain also has a long history of mobile pastoralism with domestic herbivores inheriting the ancient routes of their wild ancestors and acting as a major agent in the evolution and maintenance of landscapes (Manzano-Baena & Casas, 2010; Bunce et al., 2004).

Due to the importance of this traditional practice, a professional association of breeders, the *Concejo de la Mesta*, was created in the 13th century, which acquired legal recognition and classification of the network of migration routes called drove roads (Manzano-Baena & Casas, 2010; Martin, 2004). Yet as is the case worldwide, mobile pastoralism has experienced a sharp decline since the 19th century in Spain which led to the abandonment and degradation of drove roads (Manzano-Baena & Casas, 2010; Martin, 2004). In response to this trend the Spanish Government passed a law safeguarding the network of drove roads in 1995 (Mangas-Navas, 2004). This legislation and the strong legacy and cultural value of transhumance in the



Monfragüe National Park in Spain is among the protected areas through which the routes cross © Concha Salguero

country has led to better preserved roads than in other countries of the Mediterranean basin (Azcárate et al., 2013).

The main typology of the drove roads network is based on the width of the road: *Cañadas* Reales/Cañadas are 75 metres wide, Cordeles 37 metres and Veredas 20 metres. *Cañadas Red Nacional*, refers to the *cañadas* crossing different regions. The smaller routes connected to these major ones are known by local names (Martin, 2004).

We collected mapping data from official authorities at different levels and compiled the information in ArcGIS<sup>®</sup>. In addition to the official cartography of the Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries, Food and Environment, the relevant departments at regional government level were also contacted to collect mapping layers. The drove roads that were used for transhumance on foot in 2017 were identified with the help of the Asociación Trashumancia y Naturaleza (TyN) who contacted transhumant herders to acquire this information. All of the collected data in different formats and scales were georeferenced, homogenised and integrated with the official cartography of the Ministry following the above-mentioned typology (Figure 1). In order to understand the spatial relationship between these transhumance routes and protected areas and Natura 2000 Areas, Key Biodiversity Areas (KBAs) and Important Bird Areas (IBAs), we overlaid these designations with the transhumance routes. The number of protected areas, Natura 2000 Areas, KBAs and IBAs found to intersect



Grazing in dehesa (a type of agropastoral system) only in winter allows regeneration of vegetation, Spain  $\ensuremath{\mathbb{C}}$  Engin Yılmaz



Figure 1. Transhumance routes in Spain

with transhumance routes were computed. The spatial overlapping fragments of route lengths were computed for each area type.

The geographical configuration of the network is coherent with the ecological rationale of mobile pastoralism with major routes beginning in lowland landscapes in the southern parts (or from coastal plains), which are the winter ranges, to summer ranges in highland landscapes in the northern parts of the country (Manzano-Baena & Casas, 2010).

The total length of the routes mapped is 88,296 km. With its fractal structure, the network covers almost the entire territory of the country and forms a matrix connecting various landscapes at very long distances (Azcárate et al., 2013; Manzano-Baena & Casas, 2010).

Despite the sharp decline in the practice in the country, the total length of the drove roads used in 2017 is still very significant at 11,792 km.

Overlay of the GIS mapping data of migration routes with mapping data of protected areas (UNEP-

	Total	Number of areas which routes cross	Percentage	Length of the intersections (km)						
	of areas			Total	Cañadas Red Nacional	Cañadas	Cordeles	Veredas	No data	
Protected Areas	3,121	331	10.6	2,184.7	1,326.9	632.1	105.1	14.7	105.1	
Natura 2000 Areas	1,451	230	15.9	2,153.8	1,314.3	617.4	106.8	16	99.1	
Key Biodiversity Areas	214	65	30.4	3,313.7	2,894.6	293.9	110.6	8	6.4	
Important Bird Areas	331	102	30.8	4,450.4	3,399.4	760.5	163.2	8	119	

#### Table 1. Correspondence of routes used in 2017 with protected areas and other sites of importance for biodiversity

WCMC and IUCN, 2016b), Key Biodiversity Areas (BirdLife International, Conservation International and partners, 2011)<sup>6</sup> and Important Bird Areas (BirdLife International, 2016) also reveals the scale of the connectivity that mobile pastoralism ensures between them and with wider landscapes.

The routes used in 2017 (Table 1) cross through 331 protected areas (Figure 2a), 230 Natura 2000 Sites (Figure 2b), 65 KBAs and 102 IBAs (Figure 2c). Even considering the sharp decline of the practice in Spain, these figures show that mobile pastoralism and the migration routes still ensure connectivity at a significant scale and contribute to the maintenance of a connected protected area system integrated into the wider landscape. As the scale of connectivity and heterogeneity are inextricably linked (Hobbs et al., 2008a), the movement of transhumants with their livestock along these routes between winter and summer ranges contributes to habitat heterogeneity against habitat loss and fragmentation and to the diversity of species of different taxonomic groups that this heterogeneity allows in the country.

Considering the low percentage of KBAs covered by the protected areas network globally, which is 19.2 per cent (UNEP-WCMC and IUCN, 2016a), these routes managed by mobile pastoralists not only contribute to well-connected systems of protected areas but also safeguard important places for biodiversity not covered by the protected areas network.

#### **Opportunities for collaboration**

The maintenance of pastoral mobility in the world's rangelands therefore seems critical in the current context of a changing climate and with protected areas becoming less and less viable for biodiversity due to fragmentation and isolation. A number of opportunities for collaboration exist both within the folds of IUCN protected area categories I-VI as well as in new thinking on other types of effective measures to protect landscapes. Some of these are examined below.

#### Protected area management

In contrast to the traditional view of conservationists that mobile pastoralists are unconcerned or ignorant of the ecological consequences of their actions (Fernandez-Giménez, 2000), the pastoralists themselves bear the highest costs of a degraded environment (Naimir-Fuller et al., 2012). Thousands of years of experience has created an awareness that their survival and that of future generations depends on the results of their management decisions which leads to a deep sense of responsibility and connectedness to the landscapes they manage (Knapp & Fernandez-Giménez, 2008; Sonneveld et al., 2017).

The practices, strategies, social institutions and evolving knowledge of mobile pastoralists, all based on a constant interaction with the environment and ecological processes (Reid et al., 2008; Hobbs et al., 2008a) culminate in a valuable body of what can be termed traditional ecological knowledge.

Fikret Berkes defines this as "a cumulative body of knowledge, practice, and belief, evolving by adaptive processes and handed down through generations by cultural transmission, about the relationship of living beings (including humans) with one another and with their environment" (Berkes, 2012). This knowledge consists of biophysical observations, skills and







Figure 2. (a) Transhumance routes used in 2017 and protected areas (b) Transhumance routes used in 2017 and Key Biodiversity Areas (c) Transhumance routes used in 2017 and Important Bird Areas

technologies, as well as social relationships, such as norms and institutions that structure humanenvironmental interactions (Fernandez-Giménez, 2000).

Mobile pastoralists hold a rich body of knowledge on ecological processes, the landscapes they live in (Oba, 2012), plant species and rangeland vegetation dynamics (Liao et al., 2016; Kgosikoma et al., 2012), other wildlife populations and changes in their populations (Knapp & Fernandez-Giménez, 2008).

This knowledge is an important source of information that complements conservation research and moves towards a more holistic understanding of rangeland ecosystems (Kgosikoma et al., 2012; Oba, 2012). It is a knowledge set that is culturally transmitted through generations and has the potential to enrich scientific knowledge sets with new variables (Fernández-Giménez & Fillat, 2012). In addition to their knowledge, their mobility and active engagement with different habitats throughout the year make them very useful partners for systematic observations and monitoring changes at species and ecosystem levels (Niamir-Fuller, 1999; Fernández-Giménez & Fillat, 2012).

Most rangelands of the world have been communally governed and these common property systems have coordinated the activities of each member (Niamir, 1995) and have been devised to efficiently manage the lands by regulating resource use and mobility (Rogers et al., 1999; Butt, 2016), develop collective responses and share risks (Niamir-Fuller, 1999; Butt, 2016), and develop mechanisms to enable negotiation and conflict resolution (Salpeteur et al., 2017).

Given the pastoralists' depth of experience and knowledge in managing rangelands including the strategy of mobility, they have critical contributions to make with context-specific and empirically-grounded recommendations towards constructing robust management structures and mechanisms (Liao et al., 2016; Oba, 2012). The adaptive, flexible and opportunistic character of mobile pastoralists, facilitates adaptive management towards enhancing the resilience of rangeland ecosystems (Liao et al., 2016).

This is also the case with climate change adaptation and mitigation efforts. The consequences of climate change on ecology will vary in different locations and the interactions between climatic changes and non-climate factors, such as land use, are very complex (NRC, 2010; Briske et al., 2015). Therefore, any response to address the effects of climate change at local or global levels calls for a finer scale understanding of the issue. This means taking the diversity of landscapes into consideration and including mitigation and adaptation actions not only at institutional but also at community levels. With their traditional ecological knowledge ensuring attentiveness to environmental variability, shifts and trends, mobile pastoralist communities provide a crucial foundation for protected area managers in researching and responding to climate change and developing geographically-specific adaptation and mitigation strategies (Nakashima et al., 2012; Fernández-Giménez & LeFebre, 2006).

The above-mentioned opportunities for protected area operations are one side of the story. There is also an urgent need to re-evaluate perceived threats to protected areas from mobile pastoralists. When the traditional capability of mobile pastoralists to develop sustainable solutions cannot cope with externally imposed changes such as land appropriation, they either abandon the practice completely or diversify and differentiate their management systems, which can lead to the development of responses that in some cases may create conflict with wildlife or institutionalised conservation mechanisms, for example humancarnivore conflict and overgrazing (Sonneveld et al., 2017; Fernandez-Giménez, 2000). Such cases must be thoroughly investigated to understand the root causes and to develop sustainable responses that solve the problem rather than simply restricting mobility and preventing mobile pastoralists from using their traditional resources – a strategy that has proved counter-productive in many cases.

#### Other Effective Area-Based Conservation Measures

Aichi Target 11 states that "By 2020, at least 17 per cent of terrestrial and inland water, and 10 per cent of coastal and marine areas, especially areas of particular importance for biodiversity and ecosystem services, are conserved through effectively and equitably managed, ecologically representative and well-connected systems of protected areas and other effective area-based conservation measures, and integrated into the wider landscapes and seascapes" (CBD, 2010).

This target of the Convention on Biological Diversity presents a new opportunity for the conservation community to acknowledge the important contribution of mobile pastoralists and the rangelands and migration routes that they manage.

In the voluntary guidance document drafted by the World Commission on Protected Area's Task Force, an OECM (Other Effective area-based Conservation Measure) is described as "a geographically defined area, other than a Protected Area, which is governed and managed in ways that achieve positive and sustained outcomes for the in-situ conservation of biodiversity, with associated ecosystem services and cultural and spiritual values" (CBD, 2018; Jonas et al., 2018).

Mobile pastoralism and the lands they manage fulfil the core elements of the OECM definition. As Jonas et al. (2018) state, the most significant elements that combine to constitute an OECM are:

- a geographically defined space;
- not a protected area;
- governed and managed (including customary governance and management structures);
- positive biodiversity outcomes and effective in-

situ conservation; and

• long-term (conservation outcome is expected to be ongoing).

As evidenced in this paper, the lands and migration routes mobile pastoralists have managed over millennia in protecting threatened species and habitats, ensuring ecological integrity of landscapes and supporting ecological processes, maintaining areas of importance for ecological connectivity, and providing critical ecosystem services such as carbon storage, etc. makes these areas strong candidates to be considered as OECMs.

Given that governments, conservation and other implementing agencies are often under-resourced and understaffed (Jonas et al., 2018), recognition and engagement of mobile pastoralists within the OECM framework could contribute to improved management and restoration of areas that may usefully support the long-term in-situ conservation of biodiversity.

The high incidence of intersection between migration routes and KBAs (30 per cent) as revealed in our mapping study also shows the potential of migration routes as OECMs to contribute to "representativeness and connectivity, and to contribute to conservation in important places such as Key Biodiversity Areas (KBAs), especially in cases where protected areas are not an option" (UNEP-WCMC and IUCN, 2016a) and towards well-connected conservation systems integrated within wider landscapes.

#### Areas of connectivity conservation

The migration routes of mobile pastoralists can also be considered in the framework of Areas of Connectivity Conservation (ACCs).

IUCN Draft Guidelines for Areas of Connectivity Conservation defines them as:

"A recognised, large and/or significant spatially defined geographical space of one or more tenures that is actively, effectively and equitably governed and managed to ensure that viable populations of species are able to survive, evolve, move and interconnect within and between systems of protected areas and other effective area based conservation areas. The vision and purpose of an Area of Connectivity Conservation is to connect protected areas and other effective area based conservation areas and to maintain or restore ecosystem function and ecological and evolutionary processes of species and ecosystems across (and between) landscapes, freshwaterscapes or seascapes for biodiversity conservation in areas that may also be used and occupied for a variety of human purposes, so that people and other species are able to survive and to adapt to environmental change, especially climate change" (Worboys et al., 2016).

As put forward in this paper, the declining wild herbivore populations and/or their inability to migrate over long distances as in the past, means that the importance of mobile pastoralists and their herds in maintaining connectivity and therefore the ecological integrity of landscapes is even more critical. In addition, pastoral migration routes serve as areas that maintain or restore ecosystem function and ecological and evolutionary processes of species and ecosystems across and between landscapes.

Our ongoing mapping study, currently being undertaken across the Mediterranean, shows that mobile pastoralism still ensures connectivity at a significant scale despite the strong decline in the practice and can contribute to the maintenance of a connected protected area system, integrated into the wider landscape, even in very developed countries like Spain, where fragmentation poses one of the most significant threats.

#### CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

Recognising the long-standing role of mobile pastoral communities in the maintenance of the world's rangelands and the function of domestic herbivore mobility in connecting landscapes, the lack of proper collaboration in the majority of formal protected area systems seems like a missed opportunity to say the least. Further, acknowledging the rich body of traditional ecological knowledge held by mobile pastoralist communities and their continual interaction and dependence on the landscape, the development of more symbiotic relationships and respectful exchange would almost certainly be mutually beneficial.

Instead of knee-jerk responses to issues of grazing by protected area management, the critical role of mobile pastoralists as 'mobile agents of change in ecosystems' needs to be integrated into protected area strategies in order to ensure connectivity and integration into the broader landscape (Coughenour, 2008). Finding winwin solutions for pastoralists and wildlife should become an urgent priority in the many areas where the two co-exist (Niamir-Fuller et al., 2012).

To ensure the needed shift from conflict to collaboration, the following recommendations are strongly suggested:

• All existing and future protected areas should be managed and established in full compliance with

the inherent rights of mobile pastoral communities, especially their land and other natural resources-related rights, avoiding policies harming the physical, cultural and spiritual integrity of communities such as forced evictions, sedentarisation and restrictions to their mobility.

- Accordingly protected area authorities should develop policies, mechanisms and measures, which ensure effective participation of mobile pastoral communities in the designation and management of protected areas. This approach should also recognise the traditional ecological knowledge of mobile pastoralists including traditional common property systems as an integral part of new collaborations going forwards.
- In line with progressive protected area thinking, a new understanding, based on respect, dialogue, and basic human compassion, addressing the root causes of any conflicts including land degradation in or around protected areas is urgently required in areas where conflict has arisen or has the potential to arise.
- Protected area authorities should be supported in order to find mutually beneficial solutions regarding governance and management in systems of protected areas, starting with the development of good practice guidelines, fully informed by mobile pastoralist communities.
- The role of mobile pastoralists in maintaining rangeland ecosystems and avoiding fragmentation between protected areas and with wider landscapes needs to be better assessed and recognised by the conservation community and concerned states.
- Mobile pastoralists should be supported and empowered to protect their traditional lands and resources and migration routes. New conservation approaches such as OECMs, ACCs and other mechanisms may support these processes.

#### **ENDNOTES**

<sup>1.</sup> Online etymology dictionary: etymonline.com

<sup>2</sup>·http://www.fao.org/pastoralist-knowledge-hub/pastoralistnetworks/regional-networks/south-asia/en/, accessed 18 July 2018.

<sup>3-</sup>Mediterranean Consortium for Nature and Culture: DiversEarth, MedINA, Society for the Protection of Nature in Lebanon, Trashumancia y Naturaleza, WWF-North Africa, Yolda Initiative, funded by the MAVA Foundation.

<sup>4.</sup> Roads Less Travelled is a global initiative in support of mobile pastoralists, founded by DiversEarth, Yolda Initiative and Trashumancia y Naturaleza in collaboration with pastoralist communities and their supporting organisations worldwide.

<sup>5-</sup>This work was initiated within the Mediterranean Consortium for Nature and Culture and is continued within the Roads Less Travelled Global Initiative.

<sup>6.</sup> BirdLife International, Conservation International, and partners (2011). Global Key Biodiversity Areas. Cambridge, UK and Arlington, VA, USA: BirdLife International and Conservation International. [These data represent the combination of global Important Bird Areas developed and maintained by the BirdLife partnership and Key Biodiversity Areas developed and maintained by Conservation International and partners. For a full list of collaborators and supports please contact science@birdlife.org or data@conservation.org]

#### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We would like to thank all the mobile pastoralists and Jesus Garzon, Concha Salguero, Angel Rodríguez, Nizar Hani, Monzer Bowadi and Jamal Hamzeh who contributed to the research. We are also grateful to the anonymous reviewers for their comments that helped improve the manuscript. This research benefitted from funding provided by the MAVA Foundation.

#### **ABOUT THE AUTHORS**

**Engin Yılmaz** is Director of the Yolda Initiative, a nature conservation organisation working at international level. His research interests are currently focused on cultural practices that benefit biodiversity. He previously worked for BirdLife Turkey as executive director.

**Liza Zogib** is Director of DiversEarth, an international NGO working at the interface of Nature, Culture and Spirit. She is also co-chair of the IUCN Specialist Group on Religions, Spirituality, Environmental Conservation and Climate Justice and member of the Religions and Conservation Biology Working Group of the Society for Conservation Biology.

Semiha Demirbaş Çağlayan is a PhD candidate in the Department of Earth System Science at Middle East Technical University. She has an MSc in Landscape Architecture from Ankara University and her Master's thesis was on landscape fragmentation. She has worked as a GIS and modelling expert for over 10 years. Her major research interests are landscape ecology, climate change adaptation and biodiversity monitoring. She is the founding president of the Landscape Research Society in Turkey. **Pablo Urivelarrea** is a forestry engineer and a specialist on silvo-pastoralism at Universidad Politécnica de Madrid. His areas of expertise are pastoralism, habitat conservation and land-use planning. His work includes analyses of implementation of the European Union Common Agriculture Policy and agroforestry systems.

#### REFERENCES

- Agrawal, R. (2014). No rights to live in the forest: Van Gujjars in Rajaji National Park. *Economic and Political Weekly* XLIX (1).
- Avgar, T., Street, G. and Fryxell, J.M. (2014). On the adaptive benefits of mammal migration. *Canadian Journal of Zoology* 92: 481–490. <u>doi.org/10.1139/cjz-2013-0076</u>
- Azcárate, F.M., Robleño, I., Seoane, J., Manzano, P. and Peco, B. (2013). Drove roads as local biodiversity reservoirs: effects on landscape pattern and plant communities in a Mediterranean region. *Applied Vegetation Science* 16 (3): 480–490. doi.org/10.1111/avsc.12003
- Berkes, F. (2012). Sacred Ecology. New York, Routledge.
- Bhasin, V. (2011). Pastoralists of Himalayas. Journal of Human

   Ecology
   33
   (3):
   147–177.

   doi.org/10.1080/09709274.2011.11906357
- Biber-Klemm, S. and Rass, N. (2008). Solutions to securing mobility by securing the commons: The WISP Land Rights Study—first results.
- BirdLife International (2016). *Important Bird Areas in the Mediterranean: key sites for conservation*. Cambridge, UK.
- Botha, A.J., Andevski, J., Bowden, C.G.R., Gudka, M., Safford, R.J., Tavares, J. and Williams, N.P. (2017). CMS Multispecies Action Plan to conserve African-Eurasian Vultures. Abu Dhabi, United Arab Emirates: Coordinating Unit of UNEP/Raptors MoU.
- Boyd, C., Blench, R., Bourn, D., Drake, L. and Stevenson, P. (1999). *Reconciling interests among wildlife, livestock and people in Eastern Africa: a sustainable livelihoods approach*. ODI Natural Resource Perspectives No. 45. London: Overseas Development Institute.
- Briske, D.D., Joyce, L.A., Polley, H.W., Brown, J.R., Wolter, K., Morgan, J.A., McCarl, B.A. and Bailey, D.W. (2015). Climatechange adaptation on rangelands: linking regional exposure with diverse adaptive capacity. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment* 13: 249–256. doi.org/10.1890/140266
- Bunce, R.G.H., Pérez-Soba, M., Jongman, R.H.G., Gómez Sal, A., Herzog, F. and Austad, I. (2004). Transhumance and Biodiversity in European Mountains. Report from the EU-FP5 project Transhumount (EVK2-CT-2002–80017). IALE publication series no. 1, pp. 321, Alterra, Wageningen UR, Wageningen: IALE.
- BurnSilver, S.B., Worden, J. and Boone, R.B. (2008). Processes of Fragmentation in the Amboseli Ecosystem, Southern Kajiado District, Kenya. In: K.A. Galvin, R.S. Reid, R.H. Benke Jr. and N.T. Hobbs (eds.) *Fragmentation in Semi-Arid and Arid Landscapes*. Dordrecht, Netherlands: Springer. doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4020-4906-4\_10
- Butt, B. (2016). Ecology, Mobility and Labour: Dynamic Pastoral Herd Management in an Uncertain World. OIE Scientific and Technical Review 35(2): 461–472. <u>doi.org/10.20506/</u> <u>rst.35.2.2530</u>

- CBD (2010). *Decision X/2: Strategic Plan for Biodiversity 2011 2020.* Adopted by the Conference of the Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity at its Tenth Meeting.
- CBD (2018). Protected areas and Other Effective Area based Conservation Measures. CBD/SBSTTA/22/6.
- Chatty, D. (1973). Pastoralism: Adaptation and Optimization. *Folk* 14–15.
- Coughenour, M.B. (2008). Causes and Consequences of Herbivore Movement in Landscape Ecosystems. In: K.A. Galvin, R.S. Reid, R.H. Benke Jr. and N.T. Hobbs (eds.) *Fragmentation in Semi-Arid and Arid Landscapes*. Dordrecht, Netherlands: Springer. <u>http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4020-4906-4\_3</u>
- Dudley, N. (Editor) (2008). Guidelines for Applying Protected Area Management Categories. Gland, Switzerland: IUCN. x + 86pp.
- Ervin, J., Mulongoy, K. J., Lawrence, K., Game, E., Sheppard, D., Bridgewater, P., Bennett, G., Gidda, S.B. and Bos, P. (2010). Making Protected Areas Relevant: A guide to integrating protected areas into wider landscapes, seascapes and sectoral plans and strategies. CBD Technical Series No. 44. Montreal, Canada: Convention on Biological Diversity, 94pp.
- ESRI Environmental Systems Research Institute. (2012). ArcGIS Release 10.1. Redlands, CA.
- Fairhead, J., Leach, M. and Scoones, I. (2012). Green Grabbing: a new appropriation of nature? *The Journal of Peasant Studies* 39 (2): 237–261. doi.org/10.1080/03066150.2012.671770
- Fernandez-Giménez, M.E. (2000). The role of Mongolian nomadic pastoralists' ecological knowledge in rangeland management. *Ecological Applications* 10: 1318– 1326. <u>doi.org/10.1890/1051-0761(2000)010[1318:TROMNP]</u> <u>2.0.CO;2</u>
- Fernández-Giménez, M.E. and Fillat, F. (2012). Pyrenean pastoralists' observations of environmental change: An exploratory study in Los Valles Occidentales of Aragón. *Pirineos, Revista de Ecología de Montaña* 167: 143–163. doi.org/10.3989%2FPirineos.2012.167007
- Fernandez-Giménez, M.E. and LeFebre, S. (2006). Mobility in pastoral systems: dynamic flux or downward trend? International Journal of Sustainable Development and World Ecology 13 (5): 341–62. <u>https://</u> doi.org/10.1080/13504500609469685
- Galvin, K.A. (2008). Responses of Pastoralists to Land Fragmentation: Social Capital, Connectivity and Resilience. In: In: K.A. Galvin, R.S. Reid, R.H. Benke Jr. and N.T. Hobbs (eds.) *Fragmentation in Semi-Arid and Arid Landscapes*. Dordrecht, Netherlands: Springer.<u>doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4020</u> <u>-4906-4 15</u>
- Galvin, K.A. (2009). Transitions: Pastoralists Living with Change. Annual Review of Anthropology 38: 185–198. doi.org/10.1146/annurev-anthro-091908-164442
- Galvin, K.A., Thornton, P.K., Boone, R.B. and Knapp L.M. (2008).
  Ngorongoro Conservation Area, Tanzania: Fragmentation of a Unique Region of the Greater Serengeti Ecosystem. In: K.A. Galvin, R.S. Reid, R.H. Benke Jr. and N.T. Hobbs (eds.) *Fragmentation in Semi-Arid and Arid Landscapes*. Dordrecht, Netherlands: Springer. <u>doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4020-4906-</u>4 11
- Hevia, V., Azcarate, F.M., Oteros-Rozas, E. and Gonzalez, J.A. (2013). Exploring the Role of Transhumance Drove Roads on the Conservation of Ant Diversity in the Mediterranean

Agroecosystems. *Biodiversity and Conservation* 22: 2567–2581. doi.org/10.1007/s10531-013-0539-8

- Hobbs, N.T., Galvin, K.A., Stokes, C.J., Lackett, J.M., Ash, A.J., Boone, R.B., Reid, R.S. and Thornton, P.K. (2008b).
  Fragmentation of rangelands: implications for humans, animals, and landscapes. *Global Environmental Change* 18 (4):776–785. doi.org/10.1016/j.gloenvcha.2008.07.011
- Hobbs, N.T., Reid, R.S., Galvin, K.A. and Ellis, J.E. (2008a). Fragmentation of arid and semi-arid ecosystems: Implications for people and animals. In: K.A. Galvin, R.S. Reid, R.H. Benke Jr. and N.T. Hobbs (eds.) *Fragmentation in Semi-Arid and Arid Landscapes*, pp. 25–44. Dordrecht, Netherlands: Springer. <u>doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4020-4906-4\_2</u>
- Homewood, K. (2004). Policy, environment and development in African rangelands. *Environmental Science and Policy* 7 (3): 125–143. <u>doi.org/10.1016/j.envsci.2003.12.006</u>
- Homewood, K.M. and Rodgers, W.A. (1984). Pastoralism and Conservation. In: *Human Ecology* 12 (4): 1984. doi.org/10.1007/BF01531127
- IUCN (2013). Spain's biodiversity at risk. IUCN 2013 Fact Sheet, https://cmsdata.iucn.org/downloads/

spain\_s\_biodiversity\_at\_risk\_\_fact\_sheet\_may\_2013.pdf

- Jonas, H.D., MacKinnon, K., Dudley, N., Hockings, M., Jessen, S., Laffoley, D., Mackinnon, D., Matallana-Tobón, C.L., Sandwith, T., Waithaka, J. and Woodley, S. (2018). Editorial Essay: Other Effective Area-Based Conservation Measures: From Aichi Target 11 to the Post-2020 Biodiversity Framework. *PARKS* 24 Special Issue: 9-16.
- Kgosikoma, O., Mojeremane, W. and Harvie, B.A. (2012). Pastoralists' perception and ecological knowledge on savanna ecosystem dynamics in semi-arid Botswana. *Ecology and Society* 17(4): 27. <u>doi.org/10.5751/ES-05247-170427</u>
- Knapp, C.N. and Fernandez-Gimenez, M.E. (2008). Knowing the land: a review of local knowledge revealed in ranch memoirs. *Rangeland Ecology and Management* 61: 148–155. doi.org/10.2111/07-088.1
- Lafitte, G. (2017). Natural and Cultural World Heritage in Kokoshili / Hoh Xil: Tibet's Empty Quarter or Human Landscape? Rukor.com Blog 1 of 2 on the decision facing UNESCO World Heritage Committee, July 2017. Rukor.org
- Laiolo, P., Dondero, F., Ciliento, E. and Rolando, A. (2004). Consequences of pastoral abandonment for the structure and diversity of the alpine avifauna. *Journal of Applied Ecology*. <u>doi.org/10.1111/j.0021-8901.2004.00893.x</u>
- Liao, C., Ruelle, M. and Kassam, K-A. (2016). Indigenous ecological knowledge as the basis for adaptive environmental management: Evidence from pastoralist communities in the Horn of Africa. *Journal of Environmental Management* 182: 70–79. doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvman.2016.07.032
- Mangas-Navas, J.M. (2004). Recovery of the national network of transhumance routes: program of the Ministry of the Environment. In: R.G.H. Bunce, M. Pérez-Soba, R.H.G. Jongman, A. Gómez Sal, F. Herzog and I. Austad (eds.) Transhumance and biodiversity in European mountains. Report from the EU-FP5 project Transhumount, pp. 265–270. IALE Publication Series No. 1, Alterra, Wageningen, The Netherlands: IALE.
- Manzano, P. and Malo, I.E. (2006). Extreme long—distance seed dispersal via sheep. *Frontiers in Ecology and the*

*Environment* 4: 244–248. <u>doi.org/10.1890/1540-9295(2006)</u> 004[0244:ELSDVS]2.0.CO;2

- Manzano-Baena, P. and Casas, R. (2010). Past, present and future of trashumancia in Spain: nomadism in a developed country. *Pastoralism: Research, Policy and Practice (Practical Action)* 1 (1): 72–90.
- Manzano-Baena, P. and Salguero-Herrera, C. (2018). Mobile Pastoralism in the Mediterranean: Arguments and evidence for policy reform and to combat climate change. Gland, Switzerland: Mediterranean Consortium for Nature and Culture. <u>http://medconsortium.org/wp-content/ uploads/2017/12/</u> <u>MobilePastoralismMotherDocument December2017 ForWeb</u>
- .pdf Marinković, S. and Karadzić, B. (1999). The role of nomadic farming in the distribution of the griffon vulture (*Gyps fulvus*) on the Balkan Peninsula. *Contributions to the Zoogeography* and Ecology of the Eastern Mediterranean Region 1: 141– 152.
- Martín, P.G. (2004). The history and characteristics of the mesteña transhumance routes. In: R.G.H. Bunce, M. Pérez-Soba, R.H.G. Jongman, A. Gómez Sal, F. Herzog and I. Austad (eds.) *Transhumance and biodiversity in European mountains. Report from the EU-FP5 project Transhumount*, pp. 255–258. IALE Publication Series No. 1, Alterra, Wageningen, The Netherlands: IALE.
- Mateo-Tomás, P. (2013). The role of extensive pastoralism in vulture conservation. Proceedings of the Griffon Vulture Conference, 6-8 March 2013, Limassol, pp. 104–114.
- McGahey, D., Davies, J., Hagelberg, N. and Ouedraogo, R. (2014). Pastoralism and the Green Economy – a natural nexus? Nairobi: IUCN and UNEP.
- Mekonnen, M.M. and Hoekstra, A.Y. (2012). A global assessment of the water footprint of farm animal products. *Ecosystems* 15: 401–415. <u>doi.org/10.1007/s10021-011-9517-8</u>
- Nakashima, D.J., Galloway McLean, K., Thulstrup, H.D., Ramos Castillo, A. and Rubis, J.T. (2012). Weathering Uncertainty: Traditional Knowledge for Climate Change Assessment and Adaptation. Paris, France and Darwin, Australia: UNESCO and UNU, 120 pp.
- Niamir, M. (1995). Indigenous Systems of Natural Resource Management among Pastoralists of Arid and Semi-Arid Africa.
   In: D.M. Warren, L. J. Slikkerveer and D. Brokensha (eds.), *The Cultural Dimensions of Development*. London: Intermediate Technology Publications. doi.org/10.3362/9781780444734.018

Niamir-Fuller, M. (1999). Managing Mobility in African Rangelands. In: N. McCarthy, B. Swallow, M. Kırk and P. Hazell (eds.) Property rights, risk and livestock development in Africa.

- Niamir-Fuller, M., Kerven, C., Reid, R. and Milner-Gulland, E. (2012). Co-existence of wildlife and pastoralism on extensive rangelands: competition or compatibility? *Pastoralism: Research, Policy and Practice* 2 (8): 1–4. doi.org/10.1186/2041-7136-2-8
- NRC (2010). Adapting to the Impacts of Climate Change. Washington, DC, USA: National Research Council and the National Academies Press. <u>doi.org/10.17226/12783</u>
- Oba, G. (2012). Harnessing pastoralists' indigenous knowledge for rangeland management: three African case studies. *Pastoralism Research, Policy and Practice* 2:1. <u>doi.org/10.1186/2041-7136-2-1</u>

- Reid, R.S., Galvin, K.A. and Kruska, R.S. (2008). Global significance of extensive grazing lands and pastoral societies: An introduction. In: R.S. Reid, K.A. Galvin, R.H. Benke Jr. and N.T. Hobbs (eds.) *Fragmentation in Semi-Arid and Arid Landscapes: Consequences for Human and Natural Systems*, pp. 1–24. Dordrecht, Netherlands: Springer. doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4020-4906-4 1
- Reid, R.S., Galvin, K.A., Knapp, E.J., Ogutu, J.O. and Kaelo, D.S. (2015). Sustainability of the Serengeti- Mara ecosystem for wildlife and people. In: A.R.E. Sinclair, K.L. Metzger. S.A.R. Mduma and J.M. Fryxell (eds.), Serengeti IV: sustaining biodiversity in a coupled human-natural system, pp. 737–771. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Rogers, P., Brockington, D., Kiwasila, H. and Homewood, K. (1999). Environmental awareness and conflict genesis: people versus parks in Mkomazi Game Reserve. In: T. Granfeit (ed.), Managing the Globalised Environment. London: Intermediate Technology Publications.<u>doi.org/10.3362/9781780445403.003</u>
- Root-Bernstein, M. and Svenning, J-C. (2017). Restoring connectivity between fragmented woodlands in Chile with a reintroduced mobile link species. *Perspectives in Ecology and Conservation*. doi.org/10.1016/j.pecon.2017.09.001
- Salpeteur, M., Madella, M., Patel, H.R. and Reyes-García, V. (2017). Adaptation, Access to Resources and Mobility: From Contemporary Pastoral Systems to Ancient Societies. *Nomadic Peoples* 21(2): 191–213. <u>doi.org/10.3197/</u> <u>np.2017.210203</u>
- Salzman, P.C. (2002). Pastoral Nomads: Some General Observations based on Research in Iran. *Journal of Anthropological Research* 58. <u>doi.org/10.1086/</u> jar.58.2.3631038
- Sonneveld, B., Wesenbeeck, C., Keyzer, M., Beyene, F., Georgis, K., Urbano, F., Meroni, M., Leo, O., Yimer, M., and Abdulatife, M. (2017). *Identifying Hot Spots of Critical Forage Supply in Dryland Nomadic Pastoralist Areas: A Case Study for the Afar Region*, Ethiopia: Land. <u>doi.org/10.3390/land6040082</u>
- Stein, A., Gerstner, K. and Kreft, H. (2014). Environmental heterogeneity as a universal driver of species richness across taxa, biomes and spatial scales. *Ecology Letters* 17: 866– 880. <u>doi.org/10.1111/ele.12277</u>
- Stolton, S. and Dudley, N. (In Press). Mobile Pastoralism and UNESCO World Heritage. Switzerland: A Roads Less Travelled publication.

- Studley, J. (2019). Indigenous Sacred Natural Sites and Spiritual Governance: The legal case for juristic personhood. UK: Routledge, 146pp. doi.org/10.4324/9780429455797
- Sullivan, S. and Homewood, K. (2003). On non-equilibrium and nomadism: knowledge, diversity and global modernity in drylands (and beyond ...). CSGR Working Papers, 122, pp. 1-60.
- Tanzania Natural Resource Forum (2011). Integrating pastoralist livelihoods and wildlife conservation? Options for Land use and conflict resolution in Loliondo Division, Ngorogoro District. Accessed August 2018: <u>https://www.tnrf.org/files/Integrating%</u> <u>20Pastoralist%20Livelihoods%20and%20Wildlife%</u> <u>20Conservation FINAL FINAL.pdf</u>
- The Ecologist (2015). *Tanzania breaks promise: thousands of Maasai evicted to make way for lion hunt*. Accessed August 2018: <u>https://theecologist.org/2015/feb/27/tanzania-breaks-</u> promise-thousands-maasai-evicted-make-way-lion-hunt
- Toutain, B., de Visscher, M-N. and Dulieu, D. (2004). Pastoralism and protected areas: lessons learned from Western Africa. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife* 9: 287–295. <u>http:// dx.doi.org/10.1080/108071200490505963</u>
- UNEP-WCMC and IUCN (2016a). *Protected Planet Report 2016*. Cambridge, UK and Gland, Switzerland: UNEP-WCMC and IUCN.
- UNEP-WCMC and IUCN (2016b). Protected Planet: The World Database on Protected Areas (WDPA). [Online] August 2016, Cambridge, UK: UNEP-WCMC and IUCN. Available at: <u>www.protectedplanet.net</u>
- Worboys, G.L., Ament, R., Day, J.C., Lausche, B., Locke, H., McClure, M., Peterson, C.H., Pittock, J., Tabor, G. and Woodley, S. (Eds.) (2016). Advanced Draft, Area of Connectivity Conservation Guidelines IUCN. Gland, Switzerland: IUCN.
- Xirouchakis, S. and Nikolakakis, M. (2002). Conservation implications of the temporal and spatial distribution of Bearded Vulture Gypaetus barbatus in Crete. *Bird Conservation International* 12: 269–280. <u>doi.org/10.1017/</u> S0959270902002174
- Ykhanbai, H., Garg, R., Singh, A., Moiko, S., Beyene, C.E., Roe, D., Nelson, F., Blomley, T. and Flintan, F. (2014). Conservation and "land grabbing" in rangelands: Part of the problem or part of the solution? Rome, Italy: International Land Coalition.

#### RESUMEN

Durante miles de años, las comunidades de pastores móviles se han estado desplazando por los pastizales con sus rebaños en busca de forraje y agua, impulsados por la necesidad de aprovechar al máximo los escasos recursos disponibles. Esta forma tradicional de cría de ganado ha persistido a través de los siglos debido a su interacción armoniosa con la naturaleza. Sin embargo, irónicamente, la llegada de las áreas protegidas se ha convertido en una amenaza real para las vidas y los medios de subsistencia de los pastores móviles en muchas partes del mundo. En este artículo, los autores abordan los numerosos beneficios del pastoralismo móvil, en particular los relacionados con el movimiento. Las rutas migratorias de los pastores discurren a través y alrededor de las áreas protegidas, formando corredores ecológicos entre los diferentes hábitats y evitando el aislamiento y la fragmentación. A manera de ejemplo, los autores examinan la red de carreteras españolas con nuevos datos sobre la superposición entre estas rutas y las áreas protegidas y otras áreas de alta biodiversidad. El presente artículo plantea algunas cuestiones que llaman a la reflexión de la comunidad de áreas protegidas en relación con la práctica del pastoralismo móvil. Desde temas básicos de derechos humanos hasta el reconocimiento de los servicios que aportan los pastores, se invita a los lectores a reflexionar en torno a una cuestión que no está clara y que exige un análisis más profundo, así como acciones concertadas para mitigar los conflictos y promover la colaboración.

#### RÉSUMÉ

Depuis des milliers d'années, les communautés pastorales nomades se sont déplacées à travers les terres de parcours avec leurs troupeaux à la recherche de fourrage et d'eau, tirant le meilleur parti des ressources rares. Cette forme traditionnelle d'élevage a persisté au cours des siècles grâce à son interaction harmonieuse avec la nature. Pourtant, paradoxalement, l'avènement des aires protégées est devenu une véritable menace pour la vie et les moyens de subsistance des pasteurs nomades dans de nombreuses régions du monde. Dans cet article, les auteurs considèrent les nombreux avantages du pastoralisme nomade, en particulier ceux liés au mouvement. Les routes de migration pastorale passent à travers et autour des aires protégées, créant des corridors écologiques entre différents habitats, évitant ainsi l'isolement et la fragmentation. À titre d'exemple, les auteurs examinent le réseau des routes migratoires espagnoles, apportant de nouvelles données sur le chevauchement entre ces routes et des aires protégées et d'autres zones riches en biodiversité. Cet article soulève de sérieuses questions qui appellent à une réflexion de la part de la communauté des aires protégées par rapport à la pratique du pastoralisme nomade. Les lecteurs sont invités à réfléchir sur cette question ambiguë qui mérite un dialogue nettement plus large, allant de la notion fondamentale des droits de l'homme à la reconnaissance des services fournis par les pasteurs nomades, en passant par des actions concertées pour atténuer les conflits et promouvoir la collaboration.



## PEOPLE'S PERCEPTIONS OF PROTECTED AREAS ACROSS SPATIAL SCALES

### Teri D. Allendorf<sup>1\*</sup>, Volker C. Radeloff<sup>1</sup> and Nicholas S. Keuler<sup>2</sup>

\*Corresponding author: allendorf@wisc.edu

<sup>1</sup> SILVIS Lab, Department of Forest and Wildlife Ecology, University of Wisconsin-Madison, 1630 Linden Drive, Madison WI 53706, USA

<sup>2</sup> Department of Statistics, University of Wisconsin-Madison, 1300 University Avenue, Madison WI 53706, USA

#### ABSTRACT

The relationships that local communities have with protected areas are important for the success of these areas. However, it is difficult to capture park–people relationships at spatial scales that make them useful for conservation management and planning. To explore the role of scale in people's perceptions of protected areas, we examined the relative contribution of factors at different levels (i.e. village, protected area, country) to people's attitudes and perceptions of protected areas. Based on 3,573 individual surveys from 140 villages around three protected areas in Nepal and four in Myanmar, we found patterns indicating that people's negative perceptions were influenced by factors at the village and protected area levels. In contrast, positive perceptions, such as an appreciation of conservation and ecosystem service benefits and recreational benefits were influenced by factors at the national level. Our results suggest that a multilevel approach can improve the understanding of park–people relationships and contribute to better planning and management, thereby improving park–people relationships. For example, positive perceptions may be fostered with interventions at the national level, such as national media campaigns or national educational curricula, while negative perceptions may be most effectively mitigated through interventions targeted at specific villages and conflicts.

Key words: Nepal; Myanmar; attitudes; perceptions; multilevel

#### **INTRODUCTION**

The relationships between local communities and protected areas are an important aspect of protected area management (West & Brechin, 1991). People's positive attitudes towards protected areas are a key indicator of protected area success (Struhsaker et al., 2005) and people's participation in protected area management predicts greater compliance with protected area policies (Andrade & Rhodes, 2012) and better social and ecological outcomes (Oldekop et al., 2016). Finding ways to improve and strengthen park– people relationships is critical to the long-term success of protected areas.

However, it is difficult to capture park-people relationships across the broad scale necessary for planning and management. Park-people relationships are complex and affected by a variety of factors. Much of our understanding of park-people relationships focuses on individual and household characteristics, such as gender, ethnicity, education, wealth and religion

(Bragagnolo et al., 2016). Less often considered are variables at other levels that also affect the park-people relationship. For example, at the village level, spatial and social characteristics can shape the relationship. Proximity to a protected area boundary can increase the amount of wildlife conflict and extractive benefits (Mackenzie, 2012; Sarker & Røskaft, 2011), while proximity to forest outside a protected area, such as community or government forest, can decrease people's dependency on protected areas (Thapa & Hubacek, 2011). In terms of social characteristics, people's participation in social organisations (e.g. number of people who belong to local groups) is correlated with people's willingness to participate in conservation programmes (Dolisca et al., 2009). At the protected area level, levels of enforcement (Struhsaker et al., 2005), people's participation in management (Andrade & Rhodes, 2012) and their trust in management (Stern, 2008) can affect the park-people relationship. At the national level, government policies and people's trust in government may impact how people perceive and interact with protected areas (Gangaas et al., 2015; Karanth & Nepal, 2012).

Thus, an approach that considers scale and the relative contribution of groups of factors that occur at similar levels to a particular outcome (Guerin et al., 2001) may be helpful in understanding park-people relationships. Multilevel approaches have been used to understand human-environment relationships primarily in two contexts: to explore the extent to which individual-level and national-level influences explain individuals' environmental concern using large cross-national surveys (Marquart-Pyatt, 2012; Pampel, 2014) and the extent to which individual-level and village-level influences explain different aspects of humanenvironment relationships, such as indigenous land use (Gray et al., 2007), farmer forest conservation behaviour (Dolisca et al., 2009) and people's attitudes towards wolves and leopards (Suryawanshi et al., 2014). A multilevel approach can provide insights into the most appropriate scale for management interventions and help to link the park-people relationship to largeconservation planning and prioritisation scale (Mackenzie et al., 2014; Nagendra et al., 2010). It can indicate whether a coarse- or fine-scale resolution is more appropriate to assess park-people relationships. For example, if people's relationships with protected areas within a country are similar, then a similar approach to the park-people relationship might be appropriate for all protected areas. However, if there is

a large amount of variability in people's relationships among protected areas, or among villages surrounding one protected area, then management approaches might be tailored at a finer scale to be effective and efficient.

In this paper, we explore the relative contribution of factors at different scales among seven protected areas in two countries, Nepal and Myanmar. Nepal and Myanmar provide a rich context to explore park-people relationships because human densities are high, livelihoods are primarily subsistence-based and biodiversity is rich. However, they also differ in important ways. Nepal has protected a large percentage of its land (>23 per cent), putting it in the top-20 countries globally and second in Asia for the percentage of its surface area that is protected (Chaudhary et al., 2009). It also has one of the more progressive systems of protected areas and community forestry in the world (Allendorf & Gurung, 2016; Bhattarai et al., 2017; Bhusal, 2014; Heinen & Shrestha, 2006; Ryan, 2015). While Myanmar has maintained large tracts of its natural habitats (Bhagwat et al., 2017), only 6 per cent is within protected areas (Aung, 2007). While these forests are among the last strongholds for large mammals such as tigers and elephants (Connette et al., 2017), because Myanmar has weak forest policies and unstable tenure regimes (Lin, 2004; Woods, 2015), it has one of the highest deforestation rates in the world (FAO, 2014). In contrast to Nepal, Myanmar has taken virtually no steps to integrate communities into conservation strategies,

		Nepal		Myanmar					
	Kaakri Bihaar	Bardia NP	Lumbini	Alaungdaw Kathapa NP	Chatthin WS	Htamanthi WS	Shwe-U- Daung WS		
Size	1.76 km <sup>2</sup>	968 km <sup>2</sup>	1.2 km <sup>2</sup>	1,606 km <sup>2</sup>	268 km <sup>2</sup>	2,151 km <sup>2</sup>	326 km <sup>2</sup>		
Elevation (m)	650-750	152-1441	161	135-1335	165-260	105-2465	180-1845		
Year established	1974	1969 (reserve), 1989 (national park)	1995	1984	1941	1974	1918		
Entry	Freely	With permit	Freely	Limited	Limited	Limited	Limited		
Extraction	Illegal	Thatch once per year	Thatch once per year	Illegal	Illegal	Illegal	Illegal		
Resettlement	No	Some villages	Yes	No	Some villages	No	No		
Ethnicity/ religion	Hindu (majority), Tharu, Buddhist	Hindu (majority), Tharu	Muslim (majority), Hindu	Burman	Burman	Shan (majority), Chin, Naga	Burman (majority), Shan		

Table 1. Summary description of protected areas studied in Nepal and Myanmar

		Nepal		Myanmar					
	Kaakri Bihaar (n=100)	Royal Bardia NP (n=100)	Lumbini (n=100)	Alaungdaw Kathapa NP (n=1167)	Chatthin WS (n=862)	Htamanthi WS (n=886)	Shwe-U-Daung WS (n=359)		
Mean age ±SD (years)	35.2±12.3	32.8±13.6	38.0±14.4	44.8±16.0	43.8±16.2	41.1±14.3	45.3±11.8		
Female (%)	47	51	25	37	44	29	20		
Education ±SD (years)	2.9±4.2	2.6±4.0	3.5±4.2	3.7±2.7	3.3±2.4	3.9±2.7	4.3±2.5		
No education (%)	60	64	54	13	13	7	11		
Farmer (%)	55	70	80	86	87	64	85		
Land ±SD (hectares)	0.6±1.3	1.1±1.7	1.5±1.7	4.0±4.2	6.3±5.8	2.0±2.1	4.5±4.5		
Landless (%)	32	21	12	13	18	36	16		

 Table 2. Characteristics of survey respondents in Nepal and Myanmar

and, due to its historical political isolation, has had virtually no nature-based tourism. Environmental education and conservation and development activities have been scarce around Myanmar's protected areas (Aung, 2007; Rao et al., 2002).

#### **METHODS**

#### Study areas

We analysed data from three protected areas in Nepal (Allendorf, 2007) and four protected areas in Myanmar (Allendorf et al., 2006; Allendorf & Allendorf, 2013) (Tables 1 and 2). In Nepal, we conducted surveys around Kaakri Bihaar, a 'natural park' in western Nepal; Bardia National Park (NP) in southwestern Nepal; and the northern section of the Lumbini Development Project, a wildlife sanctuary (Table 1) in south central Nepal. These three areas, one national park, one local park and one development area that incorporated a conservation area, differ more in management than in human population pressure and have different histories and management strategies, including legal access for local residents. All the areas are surrounded by agricultural land with little to no forest. In terms of enforcement, the year the survey was conducted, Bardia NP was relatively well-protected by the military, Kaakri Bihaar had Forest Department guards who were stationed there but did little to stop illegal extraction of fuelwood and other non-timber forest products, and Lumbini was a newly-established area with no official system of protection. In terms of extraction, people were allowed to legally extract thatch once per year for a

small fee from Bardia NP while no legal extraction was allowed from either Kaakri Bihaar or Lumbini, although informal extraction from both areas was common.

In Myanmar, we conducted surveys around four protected areas in northern Myanmar: Alaungdaw Kathapa National Park, Chatthin Wildlife Sanctuary (WS), Htamanthi WS and Shwe-U-Daung WS (Table 1). These protected areas represent a range of human population pressure, from relatively low in Htamanthi WS, which is surrounded by extensive intact forest, to high in Chatthin WS and Shwe-U-Daung WS, which are surrounded by agricultural land and severely degraded forest. Alaungdaw Kathapa NP is intermediate in population pressure and surrounded by a mix of agricultural fields and relatively intact forests. Regulations do not officially allow any extraction from these protected areas.

In terms of policy and management changes in the last 20 years since these surveys were conducted, less has changed than might be expected. Nepal remains progressive, with new policies enacted in the 1990s to distribute revenue streams to communities in protected area buffer zones. In Myanmar, although the context is changing rapidly with the advent of democracy, protected area policies have not changed significantly. While we might expect the perception of benefits to have increased and the perception of problems to have decreased in Nepal based on an additional two decades of investment in buffer zone communities (although due to the success of conservation, wildlife conflict is increasing in some areas), we would not expect perceptions in Myanmar to have changed much yet since policies have not yet changed and management plans for protected areas are just now being written.

#### Data

We conducted standardised open-ended surveys (Patton, 1990) to determine people's attitudes towards and perceptions of each of the seven protected areas. In Myanmar, the first author trained local schoolteachers to conduct the interviews in each protected area. The teachers conducted 1,167 interviews in 41 villages at Alaungdaw Kathapa NP, 862 interviews in 28 villages at Chatthin WS, 886 interviews in 28 villages at Htamanthi WS, and 359 in 17 villages in Shwe-U-Daung WS. We randomly selected 30 households in each village from ledgers maintained by village chairmen. In villages with fewer than 30 households, we interviewed someone in each household. To assure representation of the perspectives of different residents, we developed a

sampling scheme that included age, gender and household position. At the first house in a village the husband was interviewed, the wife at the second, the grandfather at the third, the grandmother at the fourth, the eldest child 18 years or older at the fifth, and the youngest child 18 years or older at the sixth. If the appropriate person was not available, we proceeded through the sequence. The refusal rate was extremely low, only a handful in each area, usually because a person did not have the time to participate.

In Nepal, the first author conducted one hundred surveys in villages adjacent to each of the three protected areas. Because Kaakri Bihaar and Lumbini are relatively small, interviews were conducted in each of the adjacent villages. In Bardia NP, villages were chosen based on their contrasting locations, including distance to the nearest government forest and accessibility to park headquarters. Participants were chosen based on the order in which they were met as the first author



Buffer zone of Bardia National Park, Nepal © Teri Allendorf

walked through the village visiting each house in turn. People were interviewed outside their homes or in adjacent fields. Only one adult in a household was interviewed.

Attitude is defined as a human psychological tendency that is expressed by evaluating a particular entity, called an attitude object, with some degree of favour or disfavour (Ajzen & Fishbein, 1980). Perceptions, or beliefs, are the associations that people establish between the attitude object and the characteristics they attribute to the object that inform their attitude (Ajzen & Fishbein, 1980). For example, in the phrase, "the national park is beautiful", national park is the attitude object and beautiful is an attribute associated with the object.

In the survey, we determined perceptions by asking respondents "Does the area provide benefits?", and, if yes, "What are they?" and "Does the area cause problems?", and, if yes, "What are they?" We determined attitude by asking the respondents "Do you like or dislike the area?" Additional perceptions of benefits and problems were generated by asking respondents "why" they either liked or disliked the protected area. We pooled the "did not like" and "don't know" responses into one category because neither response demonstrates a positive attitude.

We grouped verbatim responses to the questions about benefits and problems and reasons for liking and disliking the protected areas into inductively-created categories (Miles & Huberman, 1994; Patton, 1990). The negative perception categories were: 1) prohibition of resource extraction, such as fuelwood, fodder and

non-timber forest products; 2) conflicts with protected area management, such as fines imposed for illegal entry and extraction or cropland reclaimed by protected area management; 3) crop damage or danger to humans by wildlife; and 4) problems with mining in the protected area (only mentioned in Shwe-U-Daung WS). The positive perception categories were: 1) conservation, including protection of wildlife species, forest, and ecosystem services; 2) availability of resources for extraction, such as fuelwood and fodder; 3) recreation and aesthetic, such as taking walks or enjoying the greenness; 4) protected area management activities, such as development and road-building. Dichotomous variables were created for each category. Each respondent was given a one if they gave a response that fell within the respective category and a zero if they did not. For example, a respondent who said that the area allowed them to collect fuelwood was given a one for extraction benefits.

The Nepal data were collected in the mid-1990s and the Myanmar data were collected between 1999 and 2004. While people's perceptions may have changed over time in these protected areas, the dataset provides a unique opportunity to compare multiple protected areas, allowing the exploration of issues of scale. More detailed descriptions of the data collection and perception categories for each country can be found in Allendorf et al. (2006) and Allendorf (2007). Because of the age of the data, it is important to note that we are not trying to describe the current state of park–people relationships in these protected areas, but are instead using a unique dataset that allows us to investigate a novel way to describe and understand people's perceptions of protected areas.



#### Analysis

The levels of geographic scale that we examined were village, protected area and country. We identified at which level there was the largest amount of variability for attitude and each perception category. We calculated one variable for each level to compare variability: village proportion, protected area mean proportion, and country mean proportion. Village proportion is the proportion of respondents in each village who liked the protected area (for attitude) or who mentioned a particular category of benefit or problem (for perceptions). For the protected area mean proportion, we averaged all the village proportions for a given protected area. For the country mean proportion, we averaged all the protected area proportions within a country. We then visually compared the variability at each level by looking at the spread of village proportions both within and among protected areas. To supplement the visual comparison, we compared the range of village means, the interquartile range of village means, the range of protected area means and the range of country

means (i.e. the difference between the two country means). The interquartile range is the distance encompassing the middle 50 per cent of the data between the 25th and 75th percentiles. We use the interquartile range to reduce the effect of outliers.

#### RESULTS

The patterns in the proportions of people who liked the protected areas (i.e. their attitude) and their perceptions of problems and benefits suggest some perceptions were influenced more by factors at finer scales while other perceptions were influenced more by factors at larger scales. The wide range of village means within the protected areas for attitude and the perception of extraction problems, compared to the range among the protected areas and between the two countries, indicates that village-level factors were important in influencing them (Figures 1a and 1b, Table 3).

In contrast, wildlife problems (Figure 1c) and management problems (Figure 1f) show a pattern

Table 3. Interquartile range and range (in parentheses) for village means within each protected area (rows 2-8), protected area means within each country (rows 9 and 10), and ranges for country means (the difference between the two means) (row 11). Country mean range is not given for mining problems because only one protected area mentioned mining problems. Interquartile ranges for countries are not applicable because only two countries were under consideration

		Attitude	Extraction problems	Wildlife problems	Management problems	Mining problems	Management benefits	Conservation benefits	Extraction benefits	Recreation benefits
Myanmar	AKNP	0.14 (0.52)	0.16 (0.65)	0	0.05 (0.24)	0	0.13 (0.52)	0.23 (0.65)	0.14 (0.42)	0
	CWS	0.48 (0.97)	0.42 (0.84)	0.20 (0.70)	0.30 (0.74)	0	0.11 (0.45)	0.33 (0.68)	0.07 (0.42)	0
	HWS	0.32 (1.00)	0.54 (0.94)	0 (0.17)	0.16 (0.44)	0	0	0.25 (0.87)	0.07 (0.42)	0
	SUD	0.38 (1.00)	0.50 (0.81)	0 (0.52)	0.08 (0.71)	0.27 (0.88)	0	0.25 (0.95)	0.10 (0.47)	0
Nepal	КВ	0.12 (0.25)	0.19 (0.52)	0 (0.10)	0.12 (0.18)	0	0	0.24 (0.41)	0.10 (0.57)	0.16 (0.47)
	LB	0.35 (0.85)	0.19 (0.29)	0.30 (0.53)	0.44 (0.59)	0	0	0.15 (0.16)	0.11 (0.16)	0.23 (0.69)
	BNP	0.13 (0.77)	0.31 (0.60)	0.24 (0.57)	0.13 (0.37)	0	0	0.37 (0.56)	0.33 (0.71)	0.19 (0.54)
Myanmar PAs		0.14 (0.42)	0.17 (0.28)	0.08 (0.15)	0.10 (0.35)	0.04 (0.17)	0.09 (0.16)	0.14 (0.24)	0.07 (0.09)	0
Nepal PAs		0.21 (0.42)	0.30 (0.30)	0.16 (0.33)	0.22 (0.44)	0	0	0.10 (0.19)	0.22 (0.45)	0.11 (0.22)
Country		0.08	0.12	0.17	0.13	NA	0.07	0.26	0.27	0.48



Figure 1. Variability in attitude and perceptions at village, protected area, and country scale. Open circles ( $\circ$ ) are Myanmar village proportions; closed circles ( $\bullet$ ) are Nepal village proportions; X's are protected area mean proportions; dashed lines (--) are country mean proportions in Myanmar; solid lines (--) are country mean proportions in Nepal; M = Myanmar protected area (e.g., M-AK is Alaungdaw Kathapa National Park in Myanmar); N = Nepal protected area (e.g. N-B is Bardia National Park in Nepal)

indicating that factors at the village and protected area levels were important. For example, in three protected areas (Alaungdaw Kathapa NP, Htamanthi WS, Shwe-U -Daung WS) people perceived few to no conflicts with wildlife while in the remaining protected areas people perceived higher levels of wildlife conflict (Figure 1c, Table 3). This pattern indicates that factors at the protected area level were important. However, the scattered distribution of the village means within the protected areas that had wildlife conflict indicates that village factors were also important.

People's perceptions of management problems showed a similar pattern to perceptions of wildlife problems. Fewer than 10 per cent of respondents perceived problems with management in two areas in Myanmar and two areas in Nepal, while more than 25 per cent of respondents perceived problems with management in the remaining areas (Figure 1f). However, some of the protected areas also had large variability among villages. For example, in Lumbini, the majority of people perceived problems in all but two villages, where very few people perceived problems. Chatthin WS also showed large variation among villages.

Some perceptions occurred in some protected areas and not others, indicating a protected area effect. For example, people perceived mining problems only in one protected area, Shwe-U-Daung WS (Figure 1d) and management benefits only in two protected areas (Figure 2e), Alaungdaw Kathapa NP and Chatthin WS, indicating that these perceptions were influenced by factors that only occurred in those areas. In terms of mining problems, local businessmen had encouraged people to move into the area around Shwe-U-Daung WS to do small-scale illegal gold-mining inside the sanctuary (Figure 1d). It should be noted that while these factors only occurred in some protected areas, there was a still a village effect, as demonstrated by the wide distribution of means among the villages.

Finally, three of the four positive perceptions show a pattern indicating that factors at the country level were influencing people's perceptions of the protected areas. Only people in Nepal perceived recreation benefits, which indicates that factors at the country scale were driving this perception (Figure 1g, Table 3). Two other positive perceptions, conservation benefits and extraction benefits, were perceived in both countries, but the relatively large difference in the means between the countries indicated that factors at the country level played a role in driving these perceptions (Table 1). Interestingly, the distributions of the two perceptions are mirror images of each other (Figures 1h and 1i), with

more people in Nepal perceiving extraction as a benefit and more people in Myanmar perceiving conservation as a benefit. This pattern and large difference in the means indicates that, in addition to protected area factors, factors at the country level were playing a role in people's perceptions of these benefits.

The perception of wildlife problems is an example that demonstrates why we chose not to explicitly estimate the amount of variability at each level. As our results show, the data for wildlife problems is not normally distributed, contains outliers, and cannot be naturally transformed. The variances within spatial levels vary wildly. For example, some protected areas show a range of barely 0.2 across villages, whereas other protected areas have values spread almost over the entire interval from 0.1 to 1.0. We believe these differences in variances have meaningful implications and should not be ignored. In the particular case of problems with wildlife, the variance may be small for a particular protected area because the protected area does not have the type of wildlife that causes conflict or only has small numbers of them, whereas the variance could be large in another area, indicating either a non-uniform distribution of wildlife for that area or some other factor that is driving the perception of wildlife problems.

#### DISCUSSION

Our results indicate that a multilevel approach to parkpeople relationships can provide novel insights by identifying the levels at which factors are driving different aspects of the relationship. At these study sites, people's negative perceptions were more influenced by factors at the protected area and village levels, while positive perceptions, such as an appreciation of conservation and ecosystem service benefits and recreational benefits, were more influenced by factors at the national level. In this discussion, we focus primarily on interpreting results in a way that highlights these more generalisable patterns in perceptions. Although the data, because of its age, does not reflect the current situation in each country, the broader patterns in perceptions reveal how the consideration of scale can contribute to understanding park-people relationships in a novel way.

Because attitudes can be thought of as a subjective summation that people make of the positive and negative attributes of an object (Ajzen, 2001), we posit that the relatively high number of people who liked the protected areas is driven by a foundation of positive values towards protected areas and the environment, as reflected in perceptions of benefits. However, people weigh these benefits against the specific problems that



Chatthin Wildlife Sanctuary, Nepal © Teri Allendorf

they face within the particular context of their household and village, particularly in terms of extraction and wildlife problems, causing wide variation among the means for villages in each protected area.

The high variability among villages in people's perceptions of extraction as a problem may be explained by their access to resources inside and outside the protected areas. Patterns of resource extraction can differ widely from village to village depending on villages' proximity to community and government forest relative to protected areas (Thapa & Hubacek, 2011).

A perception of wildlife problems is influenced by factors at the protected area level because people will only perceive wildlife as a problem if the protected area has wildlife species that cause problems. However, among villages within a protected area, large variability in people's perceptions of wildlife conflicts exists

because the distribution of wildlife is often highly spatially variable within a protected area (Nagendra et al., 2010). The three protected areas with the lowest levels of wildlife problems were Kaakri Bihaar, which is small with no large resident wildlife, and Alaungdaw Kathapa NP and Htamanthi WS, which harbour wildlife such as elephants that eat crops, but which also have intact surrounding forest that may provide a buffer for wildlife. In Chatthin WS, there are many Eld's deer (Rucervus eldii), the sanctuary's primary species of conservation concern, and their suitable habitat is concentrated in the south of the sanctuary, which is where villages are most impacted by deer eating crops (Allendorf et al., 2012). Around Shwe-U-Daung WS, herds of wild elephant roam mainly in the area southwest of the sanctuary. Lumbini contains nilgai (Boselaphus tragocamelus) that eat crops.

In terms of people perceiving problems and benefits from management, it was not surprising that people's perceptions were influenced at the protected area level. A single policy strategy is usually applied relatively evenly across a protected area (Mackenzie et al., 2014) because protected areas are usually treated as one spatially homogenous unit (Nagendra et al., 2010). For each protected area in this study, the villages surrounding it are subject to the same policies. People's perceptions of problems with management primarily occurred in Chatthin WS in Myanmar, and Bardia NP in Nepal, which have the highest density of guards, indicating a relatively high enforcement level of protected area rules and regulations. In Chatthin WS and Alaungdaw Kathapa NP, people also perceived management benefits. However, unlike Chatthin WS, very few people in Alaungdaw Kathapa NP perceived that they also had problems with management. A famous religious site is located inside Alaungdaw Kathapa NP, which thousands of people visit annually on pilgrimage. The warden and staff are responsible for managing this religious site and this may account for people's perceptions of management benefits, which included tourism facilities and the maintenance of roads. People may also be less likely to have conflicts with management of Alaungdaw Kathapa NP, because it has a more extensive, forested buffer area that provides people with natural resources on which they depend and decreases their need to illegally extract from the national park. Less extraction from the park decreases the chances they will have negative interactions with park staff. Chatthin WS, on the other hand, is an isolated forested area surrounded by agricultural fields, which means that people depend on the sanctuary for natural resources and are more likely to have negative interactions with staff.

However, while management problems differed at the protected area level, with respondents in four of the seven protected areas perceiving few management problems, the large variability among villages indicated that village-level dynamics also affected people's relationship with protected area management. This may be because village distance from headquarters and the protected area boundary can affect how often residents interact with protected area staff and patrol units, in both positive (e.g. access to information and personal relationships, Allendorf et al., 2012) and negative ways (e.g. the likelihood of getting caught illegally extracting, Weladji et al., 2003).

At the national level, people in Nepal may perceive recreational benefits more because they have a culture of going to the forest or a natural spot for picnics with family and friends, similar to other South Asian countries (Robinson, 1972). Their appreciation of the beauty of the forest, the cool breezes and the shade of trees may have been strengthened by the influence of both the government and civil sector, including the media and tourism sector, which have all contributed to a legacy of supporting protected areas and highlighting the important role they play in Nepal's heritage and economy.

The greater appreciation for extraction benefits in Nepal may be influenced by its higher human population densities, which means that more people rely on each unit of protected area for their resources such as fuelwood and fodder. This dependency, in turn, may cause them to be more appreciative of the extractive benefits because they have no alternative other than to extract illegally from protected areas. Two of the Nepalese protected areas in our study were located in the terai, the southern flatlands, and one is located in the hills, in a type of valley called the 'inner' terai. These areas are surrounded by some of the densest human populations in the world (330 people/km<sup>2</sup>), and have relatively little forest outside of the protected areas (Stræde & Treue, 2006; Thapa & Hubacek, 2011). In contrast, two of the areas in Myanmar, Alaungdaw Kathapa NP and Htamanthi WS, have fairly extensive forest outside their boundaries. Protected areas in the northern part of Nepal may show a pattern more similar to Myanmar as they are not as isolated from other forest or as densely populated.

While people's perceptions of conservation and ecosystem service benefits may vary between the countries because people in Myanmar actually are more likely to value conservation and ecosystem services than people in Nepal, this finding may also be explained by methodological issues. Usually people will only give a certain number of responses to open-ended questions and not an exhaustive list (Ajzen, 2001). Thus, the fact that people in Nepal see more types of benefits than people in Myanmar might make them less likely to mention any particular benefit.

#### **Management implications**

Our results highlight the potential to manage parkpeople relationships not only at the protected area level, but across larger and smaller levels. Protected areas are often treated as spatially homogenous, without taking into account dynamics at the village level within a protected area (Nagendra et al., 2010) or at the national level across protected areas. Our results suggest that some perceptions are driven more by factors at the national level, and this means that those perceptions could be influenced by interventions at the national scale such as national media campaigns and educational curricula. However, perceptions driven at finer scales would be more efficiently and effectively addressed with appropriate interventions at those finer scales, rather than blanketing entire protected areas or focusing only on areas closest to headquarters, which often occurs (Ericsson et al., 2006; Mackenzie et al., 2014; Nagendra et al., 2010). For example, community forestry and subsidies for energy substitutes, such as solar or biogas, could be prioritised in villages that depend the most on the protected area for extraction and have the fewest alternatives. Mitigation and compensation for wildlife conflicts should be prioritised in villages with the most conflict (Mackenzie, 2012).

Our results also have implications for how to capture park-people relationships across broad scales. One of difficulties in incorporating park-people the relationships into broader scales of management and planning is that sampling can be prohibitive at larger scales. However, sampling could focus on the scale at which the phenomenon occurs. Perceptions that are driven at larger scales could be identified and quantified with less sampling while perceptions driven by finerscale dynamics would require more sampling at finer scales (Ericsson et al., 2006). In the context of this study, for example, our results suggest that when investigating benefits, it would be most efficient to sample many protected areas but relatively few villages around each protected area. In contrast, when investigating problems, it would be necessary to sample more villages around each protected area because of the higher heterogeneity among villages. However, because of the nature of problems, which are primarily related to extraction and wildlife conflicts, it may be possible to reduce the amount of sampling necessary to capture negative perceptions by targeting areas where problems are known to be more severe based on expert knowledge or records of illegal activities.

Our finding that people perceived more problems than benefits with management is in line with other studies that found people's attitudes towards protected areas are often generally positive while their attitudes towards the management of protected areas are often negative (Bauer, 2003; Gillingham & Lee, 1999; Picard, 2003). If explicit strategies were developed by protected area management to articulate and promote the benefits of protected areas they could increase people's perceptions of benefits from the protected area and from strategy management. was successfully This implemented in Chatthin WS based on the results of this survey and the staff were able to significantly improve people's attitudes towards management and the sanctuary (Allendorf et al., 2012).

Finally, the pattern of benefits at larger scales and costs at finer scales that we found both in Nepal and

Myanmar has interesting parallels to the idea that protected areas provide global benefits while costs are disproportionally borne by residents around protected areas (Balmford & Whitten, 2003). Our results support the idea that benefits of protected areas are realised at broader scales and costs at finer scales. However, in contrast to the usual interpretation that benefits are only realised by people not living near protected areas, we find that local residents living adjacent to protected areas are aware of and appreciate many diverse benefits from protected areas. This result complements research on ecosystem services that captures and highlights these types of benefits for local communities in terms of poverty alleviation (Andam et al., 2010; Naughton-Treves et al., 2011; Turner et al., 2012).

#### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We would like to thank all the participants in the survey who shared their time and thoughts with us in Nepal and Myanmar. In Nepal, we would like to thank the Department of Parks and Wildlife Conservation and the National Trust for Nature Conservation. In Myanmar, we would like to thank the Forest Department, the Nature and Wildlife Conservation Division, and the teams in each protected area that conducted the survey.

#### **ABOUT THE AUTHORS**

**Teri Allendorf** is a scientist in the Department of Forest and Wildlife Ecology and an Honorary Fellow in the Nelson Institute for Environmental Studies at the University of Wisconsin-Madison. She is also a research associate with the Smithsonian Conservation Biology Institute. She has worked in Nepal and Asia for more than twenty years exploring local communities' attitudes and perceptions of protected areas and how those can be used to manage protected areas more sustainably.

**Volker Radeloff** is a faculty member in the Department of Forest and Wildlife Ecology, University of Wisconsin-Madison, where he conducts research at the interface of remote sensing, GIS, and conservation biology on land use change and its implications for biodiversity conservation. He studies how major socioeconomic changes – such as the collapse of the Soviet Union and the 1990s US housing boom – affect wildlife, be it wild or managed, and how to protect it.

**Nicholas Keuler** has a BSc and MSc in statistics from the University of Wisconsin-Madison, as well as 14 years of experience as a statistical consultant and teacher. In addition to private consulting work, he is currently employed by UW-Madison as a lecturer in the Department of Statistics, part of the College of Letters and Science, and the manager of the CALS Statistical Consulting Facility, part of the College of Agricultural and Life Sciences.

#### REFERENCES

- Ajzen, I. (2001). Nature and operation of attitudes. Annual Review of Psychology 52: 27–58.
- Ajzen, I. & Fishbein, M. (1980). Understanding Attitudes and Predicting Social Behavior. Englewood Cliffs, NJ, USA: Prentice-Hall, Inc.
- Allendorf, T.D. (2007). Residents' attitudes toward three protected areas in southwestern Nepal. *Biodiversity and Conservation* 16(7): 2087–2102. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10531-006-9092-z
- Allendorf, Teri D. & Allendorf, K. (2013). Gender and attitudes toward protected areas in Myanmar. Society & Natural Resources 26(8): 962–976. https:// doi.org/10.1080/08941920.2012.729295
- Allendorf, Teri D., Aung, M., & Songer, M. (2012). Using residents' perceptions to improve park–people relationships in Chatthin Wildlife Sanctuary, Myanmar. *Journal of Environmental Management* 99(0): 36–43. https://doi.org/10.1016/ j.jenvman.2012.01.004
- Allendorf, Teri D. & Gurung, B. (2016). Balancing conservation and development in Nepal's protected area buffer zones. *PARKS* 22(2): 69–82. https://doi.org/10.2305/ IUCN.CH.2016.PARKS-22-2TDA.en
- Allendorf, T.D., Swe, K.K., Oo, T., Htut, Y., Aung, M., Aung, M., ... Wemmer, C. (2006). Community attitudes toward three protected areas in Upper Myanmar (Burma). *Environmental Conservation* 33(4): 344–352. https://doi.org/10.1017/ S0376892906003389
- Andam, K.S., Ferraro, P.J., Sims, K.R.E., Healy, A., & Holland, M.B. (2010). Protected areas reduced poverty in Costa Rica and Thailand. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 107(22): 9996–10001. https://doi.org/10.1073/ pnas.0914177107
- Andrade, G.S.M. & Rhodes, J.R. (2012). Protected areas and local communities: an inevitable partnership toward successful conservation strategies? *Ecology and Society* 17 (4): 14. https://doi.org/10.5751/ES-05216-170414
- Aung, M. (2007). Policy and practice in Myanmar's protected area system. *Journal of Environmental Management 84*(2): 188– 203.
- Balmford, A. & Whitten, T. (2003). Who should pay for tropical conservation, and how could the costs be met? *Oryx* 37(02): 238–250. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0030605303000413
- Bauer, H. (2003). Local perceptions of Waza National Park, northern Cameroon. *Environmental Conservation* 30(2): 175– 181.
- Bhagwat, T., Hess, A., Horning, N., Khaing, T., Thein, Z.M., Aung, K.M., ... Leimgruber, P. (2017). Losing a jewel—Rapid declines in Myanmar's intact forests from 2002-2014. *PLOS ONE* 12(5): e0176364. https://doi.org/10.1371/ journal.pone.0176364
- Bhattarai, B.R., Wright, W., Poudel, B.S., Aryal, A., Yadav, B.P., & Wagle, R. (2017). Shifting paradigms for Nepal's protected areas: history, challenges and relationships. *Journal of Mountain Science* 14(5): 964–979. https://doi.org/10.1007/ s11629-016-3980-9
- Bhusal, N.P. (2014). Buffer zone management system in protected areas of Nepal. *The Third Pole: Journal of Geography Education* 11(0): 34–44.

- Bragagnolo, C., Malhado, A., Jepson, P., & Ladle, R. (2016). Modelling local attitudes to protected areas in developing countries. *Conservation and Society* 14(3): 163–182. https:// doi.org/10.4103/0972-4923.191161
- Chaudhary, R.P., Paudel, K.C., & Koirala, S.K. (2009). Nepal Fourth National Report to the Convention on Biological Diversity.
- Connette, G.M., Oswald, P., Thura, M.K., Connette, K.J.L., Grindley, M.E., Songer, M., ... Mulcahy, D.G. (2017). Rapid forest clearing in a Myanmar proposed national park threatens two newly discovered species of geckos (Gekkonidae: Cyrtodactylus). *PLOS ONE 12*(4): e0174432. https:// doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0174432
- Dolisca, F., McDaniel, J.M., Shannon, D.A., & Jolly, C.M. (2009). A multilevel analysis of the determinants of forest conservation behavior among farmers in Haiti. *Society & Natural Resources* 22(5): 433–447. https://doi.org/10.1080/08941920802064448
- Ericsson, G., Sandström, C., & Bostedt, G. (2006). The problem of spatial scale when studying the human dimensions of a natural resource conflict: humans and wolves in Sweden. *International Journal of Biodiversity Science, Ecosystems Services & Management* 2(4): 343–349. https:// doi.org/10.1080/17451590609618155
- Gangaas, K.E., Kaltenborn, B.P., & Andreassen, H.P. (2015). Environmental attitudes associated with large-scale cultural differences, not local environmental conflicts. *Environmental Conservation* 42(01): 41–50. https://doi.org/10.1017/ S0376892914000125
- Gillingham, S. & Lee, P.C. (1999). The impact of wildlife-related benefits on the conservation attitudes of local people around the Selous Game Reserve, Tanzania. *Environmental Conservation* 26(3): 218–228.
- Gray, C.L., Bilsborrow, R.E., Bremner, J.L., & Lu, F. (2007). Indigenous land use in the Ecuadorian Amazon: a crosscultural and multilevel analysis. *Human Ecology* 36(1): 97– 109. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10745-007-9141-6
- Guerin, D., Crete, J., & Mercier, J. (2001). A multilevel analysis of the determinants of recycling behavior in the European countries. *Social Science Research 30*(2): 195–218. https:// doi.org/10.1006/ssre.2000.0694
- Heinen, J.T. & Shrestha, S.K. (2006). Evolving policies for conservation: an historical profile of the protected area system of Nepal. *Journal of Environmental Planning and Management* 49(1): 41–58. https://doi.org/10.1080/09640560500373048
- Karanth, K.K. & Nepal, S.K. (2012). Local residents perception of benefits and losses from protected areas in India and Nepal. *Environmental Management* 49(2): 372–386. https:// doi.org/10.1007/s00267-011-9778-1
- Mackenzie, C.A. (2012). Accruing benefit or loss from a protected area: Location matters. *Ecological Economics* 76: 119–129. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecolecon.2012.02.013
- Mackenzie, C.A., Baird, T.D., & Hartter, J. (2014). Use of single large or several small policies as strategies to manage people –park interactions. *Conservation Biology 28*(6): 1645–1656. https://doi.org/10.1111/cobi.12334
- Marquart-Pyatt, S.T. (2012). Contextual influences on environmental concerns cross-nationally: A multilevel investigation. Social Science Research 41(5): 1085–1099. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ssresearch.2012.04.003
- Miles, M.B. & Huberman, A.M. (1994). Qualitative Data Analysis: An Expanded Sourcebook. Thousand Oaks, CA, US: Sage Publications.
- Nagendra, H., Rocchini, D., & Ghate, R. (2010). Beyond parks as monoliths: Spatially differentiating park–people relationships in the Tadoba Andhari Tiger Reserve in India. *Biological Conservation* 143(12): 2900–2908. https://doi.org/10.1016/ j.biocon.2010.04.050
- Naughton-Treves, L., Alix-Garcia, J., & Chapman, C.A. (2011). Lessons about parks and poverty from a decade of forest loss and economic growth around Kibale National Park, Uganda. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 108*(34): 13919–13924. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1013332108
- Oldekop, J.A., Holmes, G., Harris, W.E., & Evans, K.L. (2016). A global assessment of the social and conservation outcomes of protected areas. *Conservation Biology 30*(1): 133–141. https://doi.org/10.1111/cobi.12568
- Pampel, F.C. (2014). The varied influence of SES on environmental concern. *Social Science Quarterly* 95(1): 57– 75. https://doi.org/10.1111/ssqu.12045
- Patton, M.Q. (1990). *Qualitative evaluation and research methods* (2nd ed.). Thousand Oaks, CA, US: Sage Publications.
- Picard, C.H. (2003). Post-apartheid perceptions of the Greater St Lucia Wetland Park, South Africa. *Environmental Conservation* 30(2): 182–191.
- Rao, K.S., Maikhuri, R.K., Nautiyal, S., & Saxena, K.G. (2002). Crop damage and livestock depredation by wildlife: a case study from Nanda Devi Biosphere Reserve, India. *Journal of Environmental Management* 66(3): 317–327.
- Robinson, G.W.S. (1972). The recreation geography of South Asia. Geographical Review 62(4): 561. https:// doi.org/10.2307/213268
- Ryan, R.J. (2015). The integration of nature conservation and community development in Nepal's protected natural areas and buffer zones. Retrieved from http:// researchdirect.uws.edu.au/islandora/object/uws%3A6387/

- Sarker, A.H.M.R. & Røskaft, E. (2011). Human attitudes towards the conservation of protected areas: a case study from four protected areas in Bangladesh. *Oryx* 45(03): 391–400. https:// doi.org/10.1017/S0030605310001067
- Stern, M. (2008). The power of trust: toward a theory of local opposition to neighboring protected areas. Society and Natural Resources 21: 859–875. https:// doi.org/10.1080/08941920801973763
- Stræde, S. & Treue, T. (2006). Beyond buffer zone protection: A comparative study of park and buffer zone products' importance to villagers living inside Royal Chitwan National Park and to villagers living in its buffer zone. *Journal of Environmental Management* 78(3): 251–267. https:// doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvman.2005.03.017
- Struhsaker, T.T., Struhsaker, P.J., & Siex, K.S. (2005). Conserving Africa's rain forests: problems in protected areas and possible solutions. *Biological Conservation* 123(1): 45–54. https:// doi.org/10.1016/j.biocon.2004.10.007
- Suryawanshi, K.R., Bhatia, S., Bhatnagar, Y.V., Redpath, S., & Mishra, C. (2014). Multiscale factors affecting human attitudes toward snow leopards and wolves. *Conservation Biology 28* (6): 1657–1666. https://doi.org/10.1111/cobi.12320
- Thapa, S. & Hubacek, K. (2011). Drivers of illegal resource extraction: An analysis of Bardia National Park, Nepal. *Journal* of Environmental Management 92(1): 156–164. https:// doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvman.2010.08.021
- Turner, W.R., Brandon, K., Brooks, T.M., Gascon, C., Gibbs, H.K., Lawrence, K.S., ... Selig, E.R. (2012). Global biodiversity conservation and the alleviation of poverty. *BioScience* 62(1): 85–92. https://doi.org/10.1525/bio.2012.62.1.13
- Weladji, R.B., Moe, S.R., & Vedeld, P. (2003). Stakeholder attitudes towards wildlife policy and the Benoue Wildlife Conservation Area, North Cameroon. *Environmental Conservation* 30(4): 334–343.
- West, P. & Brechin, S.R. (1991). Resident peoples and national parks: Social dilemmas and strategies in international conservation. Tucson: University of Arizona Press.

#### RESUMEN

Las relaciones que las comunidades locales tienen con las áreas protegidas son importantes para el éxito de estas áreas. Sin embargo, es difícil capturar las relaciones entre los parques y las personas a una escala espacial que les permita contribuir de forma útil a la gestión y planificación de la conservación. Para explorar el papel de la escala en las percepciones de las personas sobre las áreas protegidas, examinamos la contribución relativa de los factores en diferentes niveles (aldea, área protegida, país) a las actitudes y percepciones de las personas con relación a las áreas protegidas. Sobre la base de 3573 encuestas individuales en 140 aldeas alrededor de tres áreas protegidas en Nepal y cuatro en Myanmar, encontramos pautas que indican que las percepciones negativas de las personas se vieron influenciadas por factores a nivel de aldea y área protegida. En contraste, las percepciones positivas, tales como la valoración de los beneficios de la conservación de la biodiversidad y los servicios ecosistémicos y los beneficios recreativos, fueron influenciados por factores a nivel nacional. Nuestros resultados sugieren que un enfoque de múltiples niveles puede mejorar la comprensión de las relaciones entre los parques y las personas. Por ejemplo, las percepciones positivas pueden fomentarse mediante intervenciones a nivel nacional, tales como las campañas mediáticas nacionales o los planes de estudio a nivel nacional, en tanto que las percepciones negativas pueden mitigarse más eficazmente a través de intervenciones dirigidas a aldeas y conflictos específicos.

#### RÉSUMÉ

Les relations que les communautés locales entretiennent avec les aires protégées sont importantes pour le succès de ces zones. Cependant, il est difficile de rendre compte des relations entre parc et habitants à une échelle pertinente pour la gestion et la planification de la conservation. Pour mener cette recherche sur la perception des gens concernant les aires protégées, nous avons examiné la contribution relative que certains facteurs de niveaux différents (village, aire protégée, pays, etc.) ont apporté aux attitudes et perceptions des gens à l'égard des aires protégées. Sur la base de 3573 enquêtes individuelles menées dans 140 villages situés autour de trois aires protégées au Népal et de quatre au Myanmar, nous avons constaté des tendances indiquant que les perceptions négatives de la population étaient influencées par des facteurs au niveau des villages et des aires protégées. En revanche, des facteurs au niveau national ont influencé les perceptions positives, telles que l'appréciation des avantages apportés à la conservation, aux services écosystémiques et aux activités de loisirs. Nos résultats suggèrent qu'une approche multiniveau peut améliorer la compréhension des relations entre parc et habitants. Par exemple, des interventions au niveau national, telles que des campagnes médiatiques nationales ou les programmes éducatifs nationaux, peuvent favoriser les perceptions positives, tandis que les perceptions négatives peuvent être atténuées de façon efficace grâce à des interventions ciblées au niveau des villages et des conflits.



## NATIONAL PARK ENTRANCE FEES: A GLOBAL BENCHMARKING FOCUSED ON AFFORDABILITY

## Hugo Van Zyl<sup>1\*</sup>, James Kinghorn<sup>1</sup> and Lucy Emerton<sup>2</sup>

\*Corresponding author: hugo@independentecon.co.za

<sup>1</sup> Independent Economic Researchers, Cape Town, South Africa. Orcid.org/0000-0002-2810-1167

<sup>2</sup> Independent Economic Researchers, Cape Town, South Africa. Orcid.org/0000-0002-6465-4295

Environment Management Group, Cambridge, UK and Colombo, Sri Lanka

#### ABSTRACT

Setting protected area entrance fees at appropriate levels can be extremely challenging. We provide benchmarking data across a sample of 62 countries and construct an Index of Affordability (IOA), showing protected area entry fees relative to citizens' per capita income adjusted for purchasing power. Using this measure, Australian parks are the most affordable (IOA of 0.10) to citizens, those in Benin are the least affordable (10.69), while Indonesia is closest to the global average IOA of 2.09. Protected areas in low-income countries are on average 30 times less affordable to citizens than in high-income countries. This has equity implications, and may supress visitation rates, thereby reducing the degree to which citizens attach value to, and are willing to support, national parks. International tourist fees are lowest in Armenia (US\$1.04) and highest in Tanzania (US\$43.72), while Costa Rica is closest to the global average (US\$11.21), a relatively small proportion of the US\$165 average daily spend estimated for European middle to higher income tourists. International tourists to low-income countries pay an average entrance fee of US\$20, four times that paid in high-income countries. This is arguably fair, given their far smaller protected area funding bases and much greater reliance on tourism earnings. Our findings support fee differentiation between citizens and international tourists as a means of equating affordability.

**Key words:** Protected area entrance fees, fee setting, benchmarking, affordability, global review, protected area financing

#### INTRODUCTION

Globally, it is estimated that protected areas receive around eight billion visits every year, generating as much as US\$600 billion of spending and US\$250 billion in consumer surplus (Balmford et al., 2015). The level and structure of entrance fees can have a pivotal influence on the financial success of protected areas (PAs) as well as their accessibility and perceived social value. Setting them appropriately, when done thoughtfully, involves the careful balancing of competing objectives. numerous For example, management costs need to be covered and revenues optimised without losing sight of affordability considerations especially for citizens (whose tax payments contribute to protected area funding in the majority of cases). At the same time, pricing is often used as a tool to manage protected area visitor numbers, meaning that relative price levels in other sites (or even countries) are a consideration. Aside from

the inherent challenges associated with balancing numerous (sometimes competing, or even conflicting) objectives, protected area managers often have limited guiding information at their disposal to set prices. Filling information gaps can be time consuming and expensive. Among other information, benchmarking data on comparable entrance fees in other countries can be very helpful in assisting with fee setting especially if it is presented in a way that allows for an understanding of the relative affordability of fees in other countries. However, such benchmarking data is generally lacking or not well developed. This article aims to assist in this regard.

Funding shortages are one of the most important barriers to the achievement of the conservation objectives of PAs. Bruner et al. (2001) demonstrate that an increase in funding is the most effective way of ensuring that protected area managers can adequately mitigate against land clearing and other threats to biodiversity. The indirect or non-market nature of many of the costs and benefits associated with protected areas makes it challenging to make the case for public funding allocations or to consider protected areas in purely commercial terms (Dixon & Sherman, 1991; Walpole et al., 2001). This is especially true in the developing world, where pressing development needs provide strong competition for scarce government resources (Inamdar et al., 1999; Krug, 2000). Shortfalls in funding available to protected areas in the developing world are well documented (see Adams et al., 2008; Bruner et al., 2004). In extreme cases, where these shortfalls are acute, they have resulted in the existence of paper parks - areas which have been set aside for conservation but where no real management occurs (Eagles, 2013).

In most countries, protected areas still depend primarily on government funding, sometimes supplemented with grants and donations from nongovernmental organisations, development donors, the general public or the business sector. In Latin America, for example, public budgets account for about 60 per cent of protected area available funding (Flores & Bovarnick, 2016). Yet, not only is this narrow financial base typically totally inadequate to ensure effective conservation management, it is also insecure and risky (Emerton et al., 2006). In Montenegro, for example, not only has public funding to protected areas been steadily falling over time, it is also only sufficient to cover around a half of the estimated costs of basic protected area management (Emerton et al., 2011). Competing budgetary requirements, combined with increased scarcity of and demand for land have placed growing pressure on protected area managers to both justify the existence of protected areas and to reduce their dependence on scarce public budgets (Edwards & Abivardi, 1998).

There are essentially two ways that the latter has been achieved by protected area management authorities (MAs), and with varying degrees of success. The first has been to reduce costs and the second is to increase so -called own revenues or self-generated revenue (primarily from entrance fees and tourism concessions and services such as accommodation, tours and restaurants). For the latter, an important consideration is whether these increased revenues can be retained, earmarked and reinvested in conservation activities (Emerton et al., 2006; Berghöfer et al., 2017). MAs have had varying degrees of success with increasing selfgenerated revenues. For example, between 2009 and 2015, the South African National Parks Board (SANParks) were able to grow own revenues strongly at annual rates of about 5 per cent above inflation. By 2016, own revenues contributed roughly 55 per cent to overall SANParks revenues with the rest coming from government allocations and donors (SANParks, 2016). There also remains a significant element of cross subsidisation, with only five out of 19 parks in South Africa generating enough own revenues to cover their costs. By contrast, Lindsey et al. (2014) point out that self-generated revenues from national parks in Zambia have remained low particularly when considered relative to their potential.

This reliance on a combination of self-generated and external budget sources is the norm in most countries: Walpole et al. (2001) reviewed the available studies and found that it was only in a few exceptional circumstances that protected area systems were able to generate sufficient own revenue to cover management costs entirely. Reviews such as that of Bovarnick et al. (2010) demonstrate that self-generated revenue usually forms a relatively small part of overall funding for protected area systems. Furthermore, it is a commonly held view that a vision of 'full' financial self-sufficiency is not only unachievable, but is broadly accepted as being also unsuited to protected areas that are essentially public goods being managed in the broader social, economic and conservation interest (Herath, 2000; Buckley, 2003; Hübner et al., 2014). There is, however, general consensus that protected area revenue bases need to be increased, diversified and expanded in order to generate the funding that is required for effective biodiversity conservation.

Entrance fees are probably the most widely used and easily accessible source of self-generated protected area revenues. In addition to the presence of visitors, there are several factors which can be considered when management authorities are determining entrance fees, and these will vary in importance depending on the context within which fees are being set. Concerning the practical considerations relating to protected area entrance fee setting, Lindberg and Halpenny (2001) argue that too often fees are set purely based on considerations surrounding revenue generation. In addition to how much revenue needs to be generated to that management costs are covered, ensure management authorities should consider the following (Oleas, 2008; Banerjee et al., 2017; Watson, 2013; Eagles et al., 2002):

- Ensuring optimal visitor numbers, both to manage the level of ecological impact within the park and to reduce congestion for the sake of visitor satisfaction
- Encouraging more or fewer visits to surrounding substitute sites, or encourage fewer visits during

particular times, such as times of heightened ecological sensitivity

- Achieving a social purpose, such as environmental education or ensuring that people have access to places for recreation
- Aligning fees with those of similar attractions and so matching them with public expectations.

PA planners and managers frequently lack data which would allow them to benchmark fees either against other countries, or relative to price levels in their own country. Yet benchmarking can be a useful tool when setting fees of various kinds. For example, Loomis Hubbell et al. (2002) examine the use of benchmarking to assist in decisions around setting tuition fees for universities. Few studies have provided reviews of protected area entrance fees in a format which allows for benchmarking to be carried out. Lindberg and Halpenny (2001) conducted a global review of protected area entrance fees with a focus on marine protected areas. Spenceley et al. (2017) presented the fees of Tanzanian game reserves and wildlife management areas alongside those charged by national parks, and also looked at fees charged in national parks in South Africa, Botswana, Namibia and Zimbabwe. Given the focus of these papers on marine protected areas and selected African countries respectively, a review of the literature has not revealed any studies which have taken a global perspective on benchmarking terrestrial national park entrance fees.

It should be noted that benchmarking is rarely used in isolation but rather applied alongside other techniques for determining optimal fee levels. It cannot capture essential information about the uniqueness of the protected area 'offering' in a particular country or the



Entrance Gate at the Boulders Penguin Colony Section of the Table Mountain National Park, South Africa ©Hugo Van Zyl

specific characteristics and expectations of visitors that determine their preferences and price points. It is typically used to provide a guide to the initial starting point, or the final point cross-check and validation of the results, of these other studies. Management authorities are increasingly relying on consumer research to determine which fee levels can achieve a balance between public expectations and revenue maximisation. Stated preference techniques (such as contingent valuation and choice experiments) as well as travel cost methods, which look at visitors' willingness to pay, are particularly commonly used to inform protected area pricing. They often also provide information about the potential to introduce other fees, charges or voluntary levies in addition to entrance fees. The issue of consumer surplus is often an important one, as evidenced by the number of studies which have found that people are willing to pay more than the entrance fee that they are charged to enter a given protected area (see review in Spenceley et al., 2017 for examples; Adams et al., 2008; Nogueira & Salgado, 2001).

Affordability is a central issue to consider when setting protected area entrance fees. This is especially true when considering fees for local community members or citizens of that country, given that they will tend on average to have lower incomes than international visitors. In addition to this, national protected area systems will nearly always be at least partially funded by taxpayers and provide wider societal benefits such as environmental education and recreation, which can be maximised when fees are structured in a way that promotes accessibility to all income levels (whilst ensuring conservation objectives are met). It is often argued that there is a distributional dimension to protected area pricing, especially for those sites that receive visitors from different origins (see, for example, Alpizar, 2006; Mendes, 2003). For this reason, many protected area systems have multi-tier pricing structures, which allow them to accomplish differing objectives for differing groupings of visitors. For example, developing nations might have cost recovery or revenue maximisation as a primary objective when setting fees for international tourists, and maximising the provision of learning opportunities as the main objective for local visitors (Lindberg & Halpenny, 2001). Another reason that citizens are often charged less than international tourists is that most national park systems are funded primarily or at least partially by the state, and so citizens will already be contributing to their financing in an indirect way. Many protected area systems will also have special prices for children, students, retirees, disabled people and other groups who are deemed to qualify for reduced prices.

The key objectives of the article are to provide hitherto unavailable benchmarking data and analysis of entrance fees in a sample of countries across the globe. The focus is on the relative amounts charged for entrance fees in different countries and the relative affordability of these amounts. This should assist with the review and setting of entrance fees for both citizens and international tourists by management authorities in combination with other considerations, techniques and processes. Note that the article thus does not attempt to 'explain' any entrance fees amounts as this would require a complex dissection of the role played by these considerations, techniques and processes in arriving at a given fee amount. Where appropriate, key factors that seem to be impacting on fees and especially differences between fees are discussed often with significant caveats and to illustrate how selected factors could be playing a role in observed fee amounts thereby hopefully assisting those tasked with setting fees.

#### **METHODS**

The survey focused on National Parks, aiming to ensure that major tourist sites and flagship areas were included (most of which are National Parks) and to increase the level of comparability between countries. While the term 'National Park' corresponds to the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN) Protected Area Management Category II, many countries do not use the term consistently, referring in some cases to protected areas belonging to IUCN Protected Area Management Categories III, V or VI as National Parks. For the purposes of our analysis, only protected areas which correspond to IUCN Protected Area Management Category II were included, regardless of the terminology used by individual countries.

Entrance fee data were gathered for as many countries where such data were reasonably accessible focusing on fees for adult citizens and international tourists in 2018. The primary source for this data was protected area management authority websites, travel blogs, travel information portals and tourism agency websites. Data availability was highly variable between countries. In some instances, it was possible to easily access entrance fee data for all national parks from one source. In others, a number of different sources had to be used. Data coverage was also patchy in relation to the number of national parks per country for which there were data available. Entrance fee data for citizens were found for 51 countries, international tourists' fee data were found for 62 countries while data on both citizen and international tourist entrance fees were available for 51 countries. Countries where entry is free of charge were excluded from the analysis. These include mostly higher

#### PARKSJOURNAL.COM

income countries such as UK, France, Denmark, Sweden, Norway and New Zealand (though the latter are considering the introduction of entrance fees).

The focus on comparisons between countries required the estimation of an average entrance fee for all the parks in a given country. An unweighted average for all national parks was used for this purpose as there is no clear or workable basis for weighting one park more or less than another. This was possible because, on the whole, the variability of fees between individual national parks in the same country was low.

Entrance fees for citizens were converted from local currency amounts to international dollars using purchasing power parity (PPP) exchange rates sourced from the World Bank. Purchasing power parity calculations aim to correct for differences in real price levels between countries. They apply an exchange rate that is based on the rate at which the currency of one country would have to be converted into that of another country to buy the same representative basket of goods. Park entry fees are expressed in international US dollars (Int.\$). An international US dollar has the same purchasing power as the dollar has in the United States and is a commonly accepted numeraire for crosscountry comparisons or aggregations of economic statistics. As international tourists come from a wide variety of countries (which are in most cases not recorded), it is not possible to apply a PPP conversion rate to the fees they pay. Furthermore, as the majority originate from the developed world, it is assumed that there is less variation in purchasing power as compared to international US dollars. Entrance fees for international tourists are therefore expressed in US dollars calculated at market exchange rates.

Entrance fees for citizens were then converted into an index of affordability (IOA) which expresses the protected area entry fee relative to local income levels. This was done by converting the fees into international dollars and dividing them by gross national income (GNI) per person (expressed in PPP \$) sourced from the World Bank. This reflects a common approach taken in studies considering the affordability of products, such as Iyengar et al.'s (2016) comparison of the affordability of hepatitis medication across 30 countries, as well as Murakami and Blom's (2008) global comparison of the affordability of tertiary education. Entrance fees for international tourists were compared to average daily tourist spending to get a sense of their relative cost as compared to total holiday costs.

The chief focus of the study was the benchmarking of national park entrance fees at the country level. To



Entrance Sign for Abijata-Shalla Lakes National Park, Ethiopia © Hugo Van Zyl)

expand on this and explore the data further, two additional analysis components were included which involved grouping countries with similar socioeconomic conditions. The first entailed clustering countries with similar per capita income levels, using the World Bank categorisation of low-income, lower middle-income, upper middle-income and high-income. Countries were also grouped into regions. Alongside geographical proximity, the main criteria were obvious cultural and governance similarities. Russia and China were included individually as they did not fit into any of the other regional groupings.

#### RESULTS

Results are presented in two sections. The first focuses on entrance fees for citizens and the second for international tourists. Within each of these sections, results are presented for individual countries as well as for income clusters and regional groups. In each case, results are presented in a way that allows for ranking according to the entrance fee index of affordability for citizens and then by the entrance fees charged to international tourists.

#### Fees for citizens

A comparison of the affordability of national park entrance fees for citizens in individual countries is provided in Table 1 and its accompanying map in Figure 1. The columns are arranged according to the way the index of affordability was calculated, by taking the fees in market US\$, converting them to international dollars, and then presenting them as a proportion of per capita gross national income for each country (the index of affordability or IOA, expressed in Int.\$ x 10^3 / Per Capita GNI Int.\$).

The results range from the most affordable fees (IOA of 0.10) for Australia to the least affordable (IOA of 10.69) for Benin. Based on these findings it can be inferred that national park fees are roughly 100 times more affordable for the average local in Australia than they are for the average local in Benin. The average IOA for the 52 countries considered is 2.09.

The results illustrate the relative impact of purchasing power on affordability. For example, Indonesian citizens are charged an average rate of US\$6.81 to enter national parks, which is around 60 per cent higher than the global average. When the charge is adjusted to account for Indonesians' purchasing power, it increases to Int.\$ 22.17 which is 120 per cent higher than the global average.

Also shown is the relative impact of income levels. For example, China's average entrance fee in international dollars, Int.\$ 52.49, is the highest of all the countries considered. But when this fee is considered as a proportion of the average Chinese per capita income, China has an IOA of 3.39, making it only the 9th least affordable country of those considered.

When countries are grouped according to their income levels, the results show stark contrasts in the affordability of entrance fees for citizens. Table 2 shows that national parks of low-income countries have an average IOA of 5.25, which is three times higher than



Figure 1 Map of Index of Affordability for citizens per country

Income Group	Average Fee US\$	Average Fee Int.\$	Ave PC GNI (\$/annum)	Index of Affordability (Ave Fee Int.\$ x 10^3 Per Capita GNI Int.\$)	3 / Coefficient of variation
Low income	3.33	9.11	l 1756	5	.25 0.67
Lower middle income	3.11	8.97	6 829	1	.55 0.66
Upper middle income	5.25	10.96	16 319	0	.72 1.29
High income	5.46	6.42	39 640	• 0	.17 🗖 0.41

#### Table 2. Affordability of national parks entrance for citizens by income-level groupings

Rank	Country	Fee (US\$)	Fee (Int.\$)	PC GNI (Int.\$)	Index of Affordability (Fee (Int.\$) x 10^3 / Per Capita GNI (Int.\$))
1	Benin	8.43	23.20	2 170	10.69
2	Rwanda	6.39	17.35 I	1 870	9.28
3	Chad	5.90	17.72 ו	1 960	9.04
4	CAR	■ 3.32 ■	6.08	700	8.68
5	Uganda	3.59	11.21	1 790	6.26
6	Zimbabwe	4.79	9.45 ו	1 810	5.22
7	Mozambigue	1.59	5.10	1 190	4.29
8	Tanzania	3.25	10.28	2 740	3.75
9	China	27.40	52.49	15 500	3.39
10	Pakistan	4.90	17.89	5 570	3.21
11	Peru	18.27	39.40	12 510	3.15
12	Kenya	4.23	9.19	3 130	2.93
13	Ghana	■ 4.01 ■	11.27	4 160	2.71
14	India	4.56	17.58	6 500	2.71
15	Lesotho	■ 2.72 ■	7.73 🛚	3 340	2.32
16	Zambia	2.85	8.83	3 850	2.29
17	Malawi	I 0.66 I	2.58	1 140	2.26
18	Indonesia	6.81	22.17	11 240	1.97
19	Cameroon	■ 2.53 ■	6.66	3 550	1.87
20	Madagascar	I 0.57 I	2.15	1 450	1.48
21	Ethiopia	0.92	2.33 ו	1 730	1.35
22	Guatemala	5.26	10.10	7 760	1.30
23	Swaziland	3.40	10.24	8 320	1.23
24	Nigeria	∎ 2.34 ∎	6.31	5 750	1.10
25	Georgia	4.01	10.41	9 530	1.09
26	Fiji	■ 5.25 <b>■</b>	9.16	8 720	1.05
27	Ecuador	6.00	11.23	11 050	1.02
28	Argentina	9.86	15.83	19 530	0.81
29	Croatia	9.40	18.35	22 930	0.80
30	Nepal	ı 0.53 ı	1.81 I	2 520	0.72
31	Bolivia	2.17	5.07	ı 7 120	0.71
32	South Africa	■ 3.55 <b>■</b>	8.90	12 880	0.69
33	Brazil	■ 4.08 ■	7.15	14 840	• 0.48
34	Bosnia Herz	■ 2.26 ■	5.80	12 350	• 0.47
35	Mongolia	∎ 1.40 ∎	4.66	11 450	• 0.41
36	Montenegro	■ 2.88 ■	7.23	17 900	• 0.40
37	Azerbaijan	∎ 1.25 ∎	5.59	16 150	• 0.35
38	Dominican Republic	■ 2.17 ■	4.92	14 500	• 0.34
39	Chile	■ 3.81 ■	6.62	23 290	0.28
40	Thailand	1.59	4.57	<b>16 100</b>	0.28
41	Armenia	1.04	2.55	9 040	0.28
42	Namibia	1.13	2.73	10 400	0.26
43	Kazakhstan	1.//	5.82	22 9/0	0.25
44	Malaysia	■ 2.22 ■	6.47	26 960	0.24
45	Botswana	1.38	3.38	16 /10	0.20
46		2.18	3.07	15 /80	0.19
47	USA	10.8/	10.87	58 700	0.19
48	kussia	1.49	3.95	22 540	0.18
49	Jamaladoch	0.801	1.45	8 4/0	0.17
50	Canada	0.24	0.64	5 /90	0.1/
51	Australia	5.95	0.21	45 420	0.14
52	Australia	4.59	4.58	45 970	0.10
	Δverage	<b>1</b> 24	Q Q1	10 510	2 00
	, weinge		5.51	10 519	2.05

#### Table 1. National park entrance fees for international tourists by country

the average IOA of lower middle-income countries (1.55) and 30 times higher than the average IOA of high -income countries (0.17). The coefficient of variation shows how much variation there is between the IOA of the individual countries making up each grouping. It is

highest for upper middle-income countries (1.29), very similar for low-income and lower middle-income countries (0.67 and 0.66 respectively) and lowest for high-income countries (0.41). Grouping individual countries into regions revealed that Central, West and East Africa are the least affordable regions for citizens visiting national parks, while North America, Russia and Central Asia are the most affordable regions (see Table 3). The average IOA for North American countries was 0.16, while the average for Central African countries was 6.53. From this it can be deduced that the average national park in Central Africa is roughly 40 times less affordable to citizens than is the average national park in North America. The coefficients of variation show that there was relatively more variation in the IOA between the countries of regions such as Southeast Asia and Oceania, and less variation between

countries in regions like North America and Central Asia.

#### Fees for international tourists

A comparison of the entrance fees charged to international tourists per country is provided in Table 4 and its accompanying map in Figure 2. The cheapest country for international tourists to visit national parks is Armenia, where fees are an average of US\$1.04. The most expensive country is Tanzania, where international tourists are charged an average of US\$43.72. The average for the 61 countries considered is US\$11.21 with

#### Table 3. Affordability of national parks for citizens by regional groupings

Region	Average Fee US\$	Average Fee Int.\$	Ave PC GNI (\$/ann.)	Index of Affordability (Ave Fee Int.\$ x 10^3 / Per Capita GNI Int.\$)	Coefficient of variation
Central Africa	3.92	■ 10.15 l	2 070	6.53	0.62
West Africa	4.93	13.59	4 027	4.83	1.06
East Africa	3.68	10.07 I	2 252	4.72	0.66
China	27.40	52.49	15 500	3.39	
Southern Africa	2.26	6.11	6 109	2.02	0.82
South Asia	2.12	7.84	6 074	1.38	1.06
South America	7.36	14.22	14 723	1.08	0.97
Southeast Asia	3.54	11.07	18 100	0.83	1.19
Oceania	5.12	6.87	27 345	0.57	1.17
Caucasus	2.10	6.18	11 573	0.57	0.79
Balkans	4.85	10.46	17 727	0.56	0.38
CAC*	2.60	4.88	11 628	0.50	1.07
Central Asia	1.59	5.24	17 210	0.33	0.33
Russia	1.49	3.95	22 540	0.18	
North America	8.41	8.54	51 060	0.16	0.18

\*Central America and the Caribbean





## Table 4. National park entrance fees for international tourists by country

Rank	Country	Fee (US\$)	
1	Tanzania		43.72
2	Kenya		40.18
3	Uganda		33.92
4	CAR		33.20
5	Ecuador		31.00
6	China		27.40
7	Kwanda		25.85
8			21.90
9	Argenting		21.20
10	Peru		18 27
11	Brazil		17.64
12	Angola		17.04
1/	Bolivia		15.68
15	Benin		15.18
16	Madagascar		14.88
17	Zimbabwe		13.57
18	Zambia		13.39
19	Sri Lanka		13.24
20	Indonesia		12.96
21	Chad		12.65
22	Mozambique		12.49
23	Costa Rica		11.58
24	USA		10.87
25	South Africa		10.75
26	India		10.34
27	Jamaica		10.00
28	Ghana		9.96
29	Pakistan		9.81
30	Croatia		9.40
31	Philippines		8.69
32	Cameroon		8.43
33	Senegal		8.43
34	Thailand		7.59
35	Chile		7.10
30	Guatemala		6.58
20	Botswana		6.42
39	Canada		5.95
40	Malawi		5.42
40	Fiii		5.25
42	Dominica		5.00
43	Australia		4.97
44	Bangladesh		4.97
45	Nigeria		4.45
46	Ethiopia		4.14
47	Malaysia		4.12
48	Namibia		3.63
49	Swaziland		3.40
50	Kyrgyzstan		3.19
51	Montenegro		2.88
52	Bosnia and Herzegovina		2.26
53	Dominican Republic		2.17
54	Cambodia		2.14
55	iviongolia Kazakhatan		1.85
56	Razakiistari		1.//
57	Viotnam		1.69
58	Russia		1.52
59	Turkov		1.49
60	Azerbaijan		1.49
62	Armenia		1.23
02	, a mema	-	1.04
	Average		11.21

Costa Rica's fee at US\$11.58 being closest to this average.

These fee amounts are all relatively low when compared with an average daily spend of US\$165 for European middle to higher income tourists. This raises the issue of the price elasticity of demand for park visitation. Pagiola et al. (2002) noted that demand for entry to nature-based tourism sites tends to be relatively inelastic (i.e. elasticity between 0 and -1) as they are a small portion of overall trip costs and are influenced by the availability of substitutes (where unique sites are associated with lower elasticities). Tanzania and Kenya would be typical countries where one would expect to find particularly low elasticities among overseas visitors as their iconic national parks offer Big Five safari experiences and as reaching them is generally associated with high total travel costs. The relatively higher fees in these countries are thus consistent with expected elasticities. It goes without saying that there are numerous other factors and nuances at play in determining these fee levels, such as those outlined in the Introduction.

Entrance fees for international tourists show a similar overall pattern to indices of affordability for entrance fees for citizens when countries are grouped by income, but with a lower degree of difference between country groupings. International tourists to national parks in low-income countries pay an average entrance fee of US\$20 (Table 5). This is twice as high as the average fee paid in both lower middle and upper middle-income countries (both just under US\$10), and four times as high as the average fee paid in high-income countries (US\$5). Lower income countries are thus able to generate substantially more revenue per person from entrance fees than higher income countries.

The regional grouping exercise reveals that East Africa (US\$29.6), China (US\$27.4) and Central Africa (US\$20.4) are the three most expensive regions for international tourists entering national parks, while Russia (US\$1.5), Central Asia (US\$2.1) and the Caucasus (US\$2.8) are the three least expensive regions (see Table 6). The latter three regions share a common history as they all belonged to the Soviet Union prior to its dissolution in 1991. Elements of their shared culture, and particularly an emphasis on state provision of public services, may be a key factor influencing fee levels today. The amount of variation within regions is highest in the Caucasus and in Southeast Asia and lowest in Oceania and South America, as evidenced by the coefficient of variation.



Income group	Average Fee US\$	Coefficient of variation	
Low income		19.71	0.61
Lower middle income		9.34	0.78
Upper middle income		9.35	1.08
High income		4.91	0.31







Rest Hut in Raja Ampat National Park, Indonesia © Hugo Van Zyl

#### CONCLUSION

The global benchmarking data in this article provides a useful reference point for setting PA entrance fees. As well as giving a basic understanding of what other (potentially competing) countries are charging for entry, such information can be used as an entry point to encourage stakeholder discussion about the various considerations and trade-offs that should guide pricing. The article has also highlighted the issue of affordability, a relatively under-researched yet clearly important consideration in fee setting. The following broad conclusions can be drawn from the analysis:

National park entrance is substantially less affordable to citizens in lower income countries when compared to those in higher income countries. This has equity implications and is one of the factors that may supress visitation rates, thereby reducing the degree to which people are likely to attach value to, and be willing to support, national parks. It also has potential relevance to debates around the extent to which parks should be managed and financed with the interests of citizens in mind.

Entrance fees for international tourists are generally higher for national parks in lower income countries although the variation is not as great as that associated with affordability to citizens. It seems fair that international tourists would incur higher fees visiting national parks in low-income countries as compared to high-income countries, given that low-income countries generally have a smaller tax base from which to fund national parks. This tends to increase their reliance on tourism earnings. It is interesting to note that lower middle-income countries and higher middle-income countries charge, on average, similar levels of fees for international tourists. There may be scope to revise fee structures so that lower middle-income countries charge international tourists relatively more, although this should be investigated on a case-by-case basis and preferably with the aid of market research including willingness to pay studies.

The findings provide further support for differentiated fees for citizens and international tourists, from a relative affordability perspective. This can be added to the other arguments for differentiated fees such as revenue maximisation and fairness.

While comparative fee levels in other countries and relative affordability for citizens provide useful benchmarks or reference points, it is also important to consider other key factors when setting PA entry fees. Of particular importance is the 'quality' of the PA experiences as compared to visitor demands and expectations, as this increases visitors' willingness to pay and associated price elasticities. If PA entrance fees are being considered as a component of funding and financial sustainability, issues of revenue retention and administration are critical concerns.

#### **ENDNOTES**

<sup>1</sup>These are sometimes also referred to as 'site-based' or commercial revenues.

<sup>2</sup>There are very few instances indeed where national protected areas systems receive no budget allocation at all from central government, or are expected to cover all of their own income. This is the case even though public budgets are in many cases extremely low, and many PAs are being increasingly pushed to incorporate cost recovery principles into their pricing and budgets. One region where central government budgets to PAs are very low or non-existent is in former Yugoslavian countries. In Montenegro, for example, PA categories other than national parks receive no transfer at all from national government (Emerton et al., 2011). Until a decade or so ago, a similar situation held in Macedonia; most PAs lacked a dedicated budget for either capital or operational expenditures, and there was no central government allocation to nature protection activities (Emerton, 2010).

<sup>3</sup>According to Buckley (2003: 71): "There are innumerable different mechanisms and models for visitor fees; and optimal fee structures, rates, collection mechanisms and allocation depend on the political, legal, economic and social context in



Trekker Registration Hut in Langtang National Park, Nepal © Hugo Van Zyl

which each park management agency operates."

<sup>4</sup>Some countries charge differentiated fees for non-citizens that are residents (e.g. expatriates) or are citizens of regional country groupings (e.g. SANParks charges lower entrance fees to citizens of Southern African Development Community (SADC) countries in some parks). Where these distinctions were found, data gathering focused on fees applicable to overseas international tourists.

<sup>5</sup>On the whole, we found that collecting this data was substantially more challenging and time-consuming than we expected.

<sup>6</sup>Average daily tourist spending was estimated using data for Europeans travelling abroad (EU, 2017).

<sup>7</sup>Low income = ≤ US\$1,005 GNI/Per Capita, upper middle income = US\$1,006 – 3,955 GNI/Per Capita, lower middle income = US\$3,956 – 12,235 GNI/Per Capita and high income = ≥ US\$12,236 in current US\$ terms.

<sup>8</sup>Estimate based on a 2015 average in-country spend of EUR 89/ day for Europeans travelling abroad (from EU, 2017) adjusted for inflation and converted to US\$115/day plus US\$50/day for travel to the destination (total transport cost of US\$700 spread over a 14-day trip for the average tourist travelling an average distance to a foreign country). The European in-country average spend was derived from middle-income countries such as Bulgaria, Hungary and Romania as well as higher income countries such as France, Germany and Spain.

<sup>9</sup>An elasticity of -1 implies that any increase in price would result in a proportional decrease in demand and an elasticity of 0 would mean that demand would be unaffected by an increase in price. Some examples of elasticity estimates include a relatively high -0.68 for foreign day-visitors to Costa Rican national parks reflecting the relatively high substitutability between the parks and other areas of natural beauty (Alpizar, 2006) and a lower -0.3 for foreign scuba-divers in Indonesia, Thailand and Malaysia (Pascoe et al., 2014).

<sup>10</sup>Low-income countries include Benin, CAR, Chad, DRC, Ethiopia, Madagascar, Malawi, Mozambique, Nepal, Rwanda, Senegal, Tanzania, Uganda and Zimbabwe. Lower middleincome countries include Angola, Armenia, Bangladesh, Bolivia, Cambodia, Cameroon, Georgia, Ghana, Guatemala, India, Indonesia, Kenya, Kyrgyzstan, Mongolia, Nigeria, Pakistan, Philippines, Sri Lanka, Swaziland, Vietnam and Zambia. Upper middle-income countries include: Argentina, Azerbaijan, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Botswana, Brazil, China, Costa Rica, Croatia, Dominica, Dominican Republic, Ecuador, Fiji, Jamaica, Kazakhstan, Malaysia, Montenegro, Namibia, Peru, Russia, South Africa, Thailand and Turkey. High-income countries include Australia, Canada, Chile and Poland.

<sup>11</sup>Countries categorised under the Balkans include Bosnia and Herzegovina, Croatia and Montenegro. Countries categorised under the Caucuses include Armenia, Azerbaijan, Georgia and Turkey. Countries categorised under Central Africa include Angola, Cameroon, CAR, Chad and the DRC. Countries categorised under Central America and the Caribbean include Costa Rica, Dominica, Dominican Republic, Guatemala and Jamaica. Countries categorised under Central Asia include Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan and Mongolia. Countries categorised under East Africa include Ethiopia, Kenya, Rwanda, Tanzania and Uganda. Countries categorised under North America include Canada and the USA. Countries categorised under Oceania include Australia and Fiji. Countries categorised under South America include Argentina, Bolivia, Brazil, Chile, Ecuador and Peru. Countries categorised under South Asia include Bangladesh, India, Nepal, Pakistan and Sri Lanka. Countries categorised under Southeast Asia include Cambodia, Indonesia, Malaysia, Philippines, Thailand and Vietnam. Countries categorised under Southern Africa include Botswana, Madagascar, Malawi, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Zambia and Zimbabwe. Countries categorised under West Africa include Benin, Ghana, Nigeria and Senegal.

#### **ABOUT THE AUTHORS**

Hugo van Zyl is the founder and director of Independent Economic Researchers, a consultancy focusing on applied environmental resource economics and finance, socio-economic impact assessment and project appraisal. He has extensive international experience contributing to biodiversity conservation programmes, environmental authorisation processes, protected areas ecosystem services valuations. investment cases, cost-benefit analysis and sustainable financing strategies. From a policy perspective, he has provided economic inputs and guidance to biodiversity conservation, climate change, EIAs, mine closure funding and water resource management policy. Key initiatives to which he has contributed include The Economics of Ecosystems and Biodiversity (TEEB), ValuES and the Biodiversity Finance Initiative (BIOFIN).

**James Kinghorn** conducts research in the field of environmental economics. He has spent the past four years at Independent Economic Researchers, where his focus has been on supporting strategic processes surrounding climate change mitigation and adaptation, biodiversity finance and offsets guidance, as well as project appraisal at various scales, particularly where ecosystem services valuation is required. James is especially interested in novel and experimental approaches to all phases of the research process, including question formulation, data collection and analysis, and the presentation of findings.

**Lucy Emerton** is an environmental economist specialising in ecosystem valuation, conservation finance and incentive mechanisms. Over the last 30 years she has worked as technical advisor to a wide range of government, non-governmental, private sector, bilateral and multilateral organisations across almost 70 countries worldwide, including establishing and leading IUCN's environmental economics programmes in Africa and Asia. Lucy is currently Conservation Economics and Finance Director of the Environment Management Group, a consultancy group and think-tank providing business planning advice and technical support in environmental sustainability to the corporate sector, governments and international agencies.

#### REFERENCES

- Adams, C., da Motta, R.S., Oritz, R.A., Reid, J., Aznar, C.E. and de Almeida Sinisgalli, P.A. (2008). The use of contingent valuation for evaluating protected areas in the developing world: Economic valuation of Morro do Diabo State Park, Atlantic Rainforest, São Paulo State (Brazil). *Ecological Economics* 66: 359–370 [online]. Available at: doi:10.1016/ j.ecolecon.2007.09.008 (Accessed: 9 July 2018).
- Alpizar, F. (2006). The pricing of protected areas in nature-based tourism: A local perspective. *Ecological Economics* 56, 294– 307 [online]. Available at: doi:10.1016/j.ecolecon.2005.02.005 (Accessed: 9 July 2018).
- Balmford, A., Green, J., Anderson, M., Beresford, J., Huang, C., Naidoo, R., Walpole, M. and Manica, A. (2015). Walk on the Wild Side: Estimating the Global Magnitude of Visits to Protected Areas. *PLoS Biol* 13(2) [online]. Available at: doi.org/10.1371/journal.pbio.1002074 (Accessed: 9 July 2018).
- Banerjee, O., Cicowiez, M., Ochuodho, T., Masozera, M., Wolde,
  B., Lal, P., Dudek, S. and Alavalapati, J.R.R. (2017).
  Financing the Sustainable Management of Rwanda's
  Protected Areas. Centro de Estudios Distributivos, Laborales
  y Sociales. Universidad Nacional de La Plata.
- Berghöfer, A., Emerton, L., Moreno, A., Rode, J., Schröter-Schlaack, C., Wittmer, H. and van Zyl, H. (2017). Sustainable financing for biodiversity conservation – a review of experiences in German development cooperation. UFZ – Helmholtz Centre for Environmental Research Discussion Paper 1/2017[online]. Available at: DOI:10.13140/ RG.2.2.23177.75365 (Accessed: 9 July 2018).
- Bovarnick, A., Fernandez Baca, J., Galindo, J. and Negret, H. (2010). *Financial Sustainability of Protected Areas in Latin America and the Caribbean: Investment Policy Guidance*. United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) and The Nature Conservancy (TNC).
- Bruner, A.G., Gullison, R.E. and Balmford, A. (2004). Financial Costs and Shortfalls of Managing and Expanding Protected-Area Systems in Developing Countries. *BioScience* 54(12): 1119–1126 [online]. doi.org/10.1641/0006-3568(2004)054 [1119:fcasom]2.0.co;2
- Bruner, A.G., Gullison, R.E., Rice, R.E. and da Fonseca, G.A.B. (2001). 'Effectiveness of parks in protecting tropical biodiversity'. *Science* 291: 125–128. doi.org/10.1126/ science.291.5501.125
- Buckley, R. (2003). 'Pay to Play in Parks: An Australian Policy Perspective on Visitor Fees in Public Protected Areas'. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism* 11(1): 56–73. doi.org/10.1080/09669580308667193
- Dixon, J.A. and Sherman, P.B. (1991). *Economics of protected areas: a new look at the benefits and costs*. London, UK: Earthscan.
- Eagles, P.F.J. (2013). Research priorities in park tourism. *Journal* of Sustainable Tourism [online]. Available at: DOI:10.1080/09669582.2013.785554.
- Eagles, P.F.J., McCool, S.F. and Haynes, C.D.A. (2002). Sustainable Tourism in Protected Areas: Guidelines for

*Planning and Management*. Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, UK: IUCN.

- Edwards, P.J. and Abivardi, C. (1998). The value of biodiversity: where ecology and economy blend. *Biological Conservation* 83: 239–246. doi.org/10.1016/s0006-3207(97)00141-9
- Emerton, L. (2010). Protected Area Financing: Options for Macedonia. Skopje, Macedonia: NDP-GEF/ Ministry of Environment and Physical Planning.
- Emerton, L., Bishop, J. and Thomas, L. (2006). Sustainable Financing of Protected Areas: A global review of challenges and options. German Federal Agency for Nature Conservation (BfN) and IUCN - The World Conservation Union. Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, UK: IUCN.
- Emerton, L., Kaludjerovic J. and Jovetic, I. (2011). *The Economic Value of Protected Areas in Montenegro*. Podgorica, Montenegro: UNDP.
- European Union (EU). (2017). *Tourism trips of Europeans*. Eurostat [online publication], (29 June 2018). Available at: http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/statistics-explained/index.php? title=Tourism trips of Europeans (Accessed: 5 July 2019).
- Flores, M. and Bovarnick, A. (2016). Guide to improving the budget and funding of national protected area systems. Lessons from Chile, Guatemala and Peru. New York, USA: UNDP.
- Herath, G. (2000). Entrance Fees as a Suitable Mechanism for Financing Natural Areas in Australia. *International Journal of Wilderness* 6(2): 35–39.
- Hübner, A., Phong, L.T. and Châu, T.S.H. (2014). Good governance and tourism development in protected areas: The case of Phong Nha-Ke Bang National Park, central Vietnam. *Koedoe* 56(2) [online]. dx.doi.org/10.4102/ koedoe.v56i2.1146
- Inamdar, A., de Jode, H., Lindsay, K. and Cobb, S. (1999). Capitalizing on nature: protected area management. *Science*, 283: 1856–1857. doi.org/10.1126/science.283.5409.1856
- Iyengar, S., Tay-Teo, K., Vogler, S., Beyer, P., Wiktor, S. and de Joncheere, K. (2016). Prices, Costs, and Affordability of New Medicines for Hepatitis C in 30 Countries: An Economic Analysis. *PLoS Med* 13 (5) [online]. doi:10.1371/ journal.pmed.1002032
- Krug, W. (2000). Nature Tourism and Protected Area Pricing: Lessons learned from Africa. In the Design and Management of Forest Protected Areas: Papers presented at the Beyond the Trees Conference, 8 – 11 May 2000. Bangkok, Thailand.
- Lindberg, K. and Halpenny, E. (2001). *Protected Area Visitor Fees: Country Review*. The Summit Foundation and The International Ecotourism Society and Programme for Belize.
- Lindsey, P.A., Nyirenda, V.R., Barnes, J.I., Becker, M.S., McRobb, R., Tambling, C.J., Taylor, W.A., Watson, F.G. and t'Sas-Rolfes, M. (2014). Underperformance of African Protected Area Networks and the Case for New Conservation Models: Insights from Zambia. *PLoS ONE* 9(5) [online]. doi:10.1371/ journal.pone.0094109
- Loomis Hubbell, L.W., Massa, R.J. and Lapovsky, L. (2002). Using benchmarking to influence tuition and fee decisions. *New Directions for Higher Education* 118. doi.org/10.1002/he.55
- Mendes. I. (2003). Pricing recreation use of national parks for an efficient nature conservation: an application to the Portuguese case. Paper presented to the Permanent Seminar of the Department of Economics, Technical University of Lisbon.

- Murakami, Y. and Blom, A. (2008). Accessibility and Affordability of Tertiary Education in Brazil, Colombia, Mexico and Peru within a Global Context. Policy Research Working Paper, Latin America and Caribbean Region: Human Development Sector. Washington, DC: The World Bank.
- Nogueira, J.M. and Salgado, G.S.M. (2001). *Economia e Gestão de Áreas Protegidas: o caso do Parque Nacional de Brasília.* Paper presented at the IV Encontro da Sociedade Brasileira de Economia Ecológica, Belém, PA. November 2001.
- Oleas, R. (2008). The Galapagos National Park entrance fee: A global perspective and options for the future. Galapagos Report 2007-2008. Galapagos Conservancy [online periodical], (2008). Available at: https://www.galapagos.org/ about\_galapagos/about-galapagos/library/galapagos-reports/ galapagos-report-2007-2008/ (Accessed: 5 July 2018).
- Pagiola, S., Martin-Hurtado, R., Shyamsundar, P., Mani, M. and Silva, P. (2002). Generating Public Sector Resources to Finance Sustainable Development: Revenue and Incentive Effects. World Bank Technical Paper No. 538. Washington, DC: World Bank [online]. Available at: https:// openknowledge.worldbank.org/handle/10986/15206 (Accessed: 9 July 2018).

- Pascoe, S., Doshi, A., Thébaud, O., Thomas, C., Schuttenberg, H., Heron, S., Setiasih, N., Tan, C.H., True, J., Wallmo, K., Loper, C. and Calgaro, E. (2014). Estimating the potential impact of entry fees for marine parks on dive tourism in South East Asia. *Marine Policy* 47: 147–152 [online]. doi.org/10.1016/ j.marpol.2014.02.017
- South African National Parks (SANParks). (2016). South African National Parks Strategic Plan 2016/17 – 2019/20. Pretoria, South Africa: SANParks.
- Spenceley, A. Rylance, A. and Laiser, S.L. (2017). Protected area entrance fees in Tanzania: The search for competitiveness and value for money. *Koedoe*, 59(1) [online]. doi. org/10.4102/ koedoe. v59i1.1442
- Walpole, M., Goodwin, H.J. and Ward, K.G.R. (2001). Pricing policy for tourism in protected areas: Lessons from Komodo National Park, Indonesia' *Conservation Biology* 15: 218–227. doi.org/10.1046/j.1523-1739.2001.99231.x
- Watson, C.L. (2013). An economic analysis of National Park visitation rates. MSc thesis, Montana State University. Montana, USA: Bozeman.

#### **RESUMEN**

El establecimiento de tarifas de entrada a las áreas protegidas (AP) en los niveles apropiados puede ser muy desafiante. Proporcionamos datos de referencia en una muestra de 62 países y construimos un Índice de asequibilidad (IOA, por sus siglas en inglés), que muestra las tarifas de entrada a las AP en relación con el ingreso per cápita de los ciudadanos ajustado al poder adquisitivo. Utilizando esta medida, los parques australianos son los más asequibles (IOA de 0.10) para los ciudadanos, los de Benín son los menos asequibles (10.69), mientras que Indonesia es el más cercano al promedio mundial de IOA de 2.09. Las AP en los países de bajos ingresos son en promedio 30 veces menos asequibles para los ciudadanos que en los países de altos ingresos. Esto tiene implicaciones en lo que respecta a la equidad, y puede frenar las tasas de visitación, reduciendo así la medida en que los ciudadanos valoran los parques nacionales y están dispuestos a apoyarlos. Las tarifas para turistas internacionales son más bajas en Armenia (US\$1.04) y más altas en Tanzania (US\$4.3.72), en tanto que Costa Rica está más cerca del promedio mundial (US\$11.21), una proporción relativamente pequeña del gasto diario promedio estimado de US\$165 para los turistas europeos de ingresos medios a altos. Los turistas internacionales que visitan los países de bajos ingresos pagan una tarifa de entrada promedio de US\$20, cuatro veces más que en los países de altos ingresos. Podría decirse que esto es razonable, dado que sus bases de financiación para las AP son mucho más pequeñas y su dependencia mucho mayor en los ingresos del turismo. Nuestros hallazgos apoyan la diferenciación de tarifas entre ciudadanos y turistas internacionales como un medio para equiparar la asequibilidad.

#### RÉSUMÉ

Il peut s'avérer difficile de fixer un tarif approprié pour les droits d'entrée des aires protégées (AP). Nous présentons des données comparatives pour un échantillon de 62 pays et avons constitué un index d'accessibilité financière, indiquant les frais d'entrée des AP par rapport au revenu par habitant, ajustés en fonction du pouvoir d'achat des citoyens. Selon cette mesure, les parcs nationaux australiens s'avèrent les plus abordables pour leurs citoyens (index: 0,10), ceux du Bénin sont les moins abordables (10,69), tandis que l'Indonésie se rapproche le plus de la moyenne de l'index à 2,09. Les AP des pays à faible revenu sont en moyenne 30 fois moins abordables pour leurs citoyens que ceux des pays à revenu élevé. Outre les implications en termes d'équité, cela peut faire décroitre les taux de fréquentation, en affaiblissant l'opinion favorable des citoyens envers leurs parcs nationaux et, par voie de conséquence, leur volonté de les soutenir. Les recettes du tourisme international en Arménie se sont révélés être les plus bas (1,04 USD), les plus élevés étant en Tanzanie (43,72 USD), tandis que le Costa Rica se rapproche le plus de la moyenne mondiale (11,21 USD), ce qui constitue en fait une proportion relativement faible des dépenses quotidiennes moyennes estimées (165 USD) des touristes européens à revenu élevé. Les touristes internationaux paient un droit d'entrée moyen de 20 USD dans les parcs des pays à faible revenu, soit quatre fois plus que dans les parcs des pays à revenu élevé. Cette disparité est sans doute justifiée, compte tenu des sources de financement beaucoup plus réduites des pays à faible revenu et de leur forte dépendance au tourisme. Nos conclusions viennent étayer la mise en oeuvre d'une différenciation dans les droits d'entrée entre citoyens et touristes internationaux en tant que moyen d'égaliser l'abordabilité des parcs.



## ENHANCING BIRD BIODIVERSITY THROUGH IMPROVED WATER MANAGEMENT IN A VIET NAM WETLAND NATIONAL PARK

Chu Van Cuong<sup>1\*</sup>, Peter Dart<sup>2</sup>, Sharon Brown<sup>2</sup>, Tran Van Thang<sup>3</sup> and Vo Thi Minh Le<sup>4</sup>

\*Corresponding author:

<sup>1</sup>Institute for Sustainable Natural Resource Management and Biodiversity Conservation, Viet Nam

<sup>2</sup>School of Agriculture and Food Sciences, The University of Queensland, Australia <sup>3</sup>U Minh Thuong National Park, Viet Nam

<sup>4</sup>Institute of World Economics and Politics, Viet Nam Academy of Social Sciences, Viet Nam

#### ABSTRACT

U Minh Thuong National Park, one of the two largest remaining peat swamp, melaleuca forests in Viet Nam is a very Important Bird and Conservation Area because of its diverse wetland habitats. A devastating forest fire in 2002 resulted in a new regime of fire control based on an imposed permanent flooding regime over large areas of the Park that led to severe wetland and forest degradation. This in turn negatively impacted on bird species diversity and populations. In 2009, the Government of Viet Nam and the park authority adopted an improved water management practice. A survey four years later recorded two new species in the list of 159 bird species for the park. Of these, 25 threatened species were using the wetland park and adjacent Buffer Zone for living and feeding habitat. Based on the largest count occurring during three continuous days, the water bird population in the bird colony in 2013 increased by 33 per cent compared to the 2009 level. The positive response of avifauna to the changes in U Minh Thuong with respect to the hydrology of seasonally flooded melaleuca wetland forest indicates the need to understand how the 'normal' wetland processes operate in support of biodiversity conservation before modifying them for fire management.

Key words: Water birds, wetland birds, wetland restoration, hydrological changes, U Minh Thuong

#### **INTRODUCTION**

Although wetlands cover only ca. 9 per cent of the world land area, they are globally significant ecosystems for biodiversity conservation of plants and animals, particularly waterfowls (Zedler & Kercher, 2005; Bobbink et al., 2006). However, these natural ecosystems are inadequately protected from land conversion to agriculture, water drainage and fire (Kingsford & Thomas, 2004; Yule, 2010; Hawa et al., 2016). Consequently, over half of these global wetlands have already been lost as a result of human activities, particularly in densely populated regions, where more than 80 per cent of the wetlands have been lost or severely degraded (Bobbink et al., 2006; Davidson, 2014). As a result, wetland biodiversity is under high risk and many species are threatened with extinction (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, 2005).

The Mekong Delta is a major rice and aquaculture production area in Viet Nam, and was one of the largest

natural wetland ecosystems of melaleuca (*Melaleuca cajuputi*) and mangrove forest in the world before 1900 (Thinh, 2003; Biggs, 2005). However, human disturbance through wetland reclamation programmes for agricultural intensification in the Delta resulted in significant loss and fragmentation of the high environment and conservation values of the wetland (Buckton et al., 1999; Thinh, 2003; Buckton & Safford, 2004). In 1998, approximately 94 per cent of the Mekong Delta's natural wetland area had been artificially reclaimed for agriculture and aquacultural production (Thinh, 2003). A study in 2015 found only 1.7 per cent of the total of four million ha of natural wetland in the Mekong had been left (Hoang et al., 2017).

U Minh, one of the three most important wetland regions in the Mekong Delta, was covered by extensive melaleuca forest (Buckton & Safford, 2004; Biggs, 2005). However, since 1980 it has experienced a large loss of forested area, and wetland degradation through expansion of rice and aquaculture production, and canal development for irrigation (Biggs, 2005; Viet Nam Environmental Protection Agency, 2005). To control this land conversion, wetland protected areas have been established by the Central Government in the Mekong Delta to conserve biodiversity and important wetland bird areas in particular since the 1990s (Buckton et al., 1999; Viet Nam Environmental Protection Agency, 2005).

U Minh Thuong National Park (UMTNP) houses one of the two largest remaining peat swamp melaleuca forests in Viet Nam, a unique ecosystem in the Indochina region and recognised as the most Important Bird and Conservation Area in Viet Nam (Buckton et al., 1999). The park is also the home of the largest water bird colony in the Mekong region (Hoa, 2002). However, the rich avifauna of the park was negatively affected by forest clearance and wildfire. Especially, inappropriate water management practice for fire prevention, which was only focused on preserving tree species based on a deep and permanent flood regime, led to further wetland and habitat degradation in UMTNP (Biggs, 2005; 2011; Dang, 2009; Huong, 2011).

In this article, we present the impacts to avifauna of hydrological changes imposed from water management of UMTNP and management options which might enhance biodiversity conservation and fire prevention in UMTNP and other similar places in the Mekong Delta and the world.

#### WETLAND MANAGEMENT CHALLENGE IN U MINH THUONG NATIONAL PARK U Minh Thuong National Park

U Minh Thuong National Park (UMTNP) is located on the upper part of the U Minh region from 9031'16"– 9039'45" North and 105003'6"–105007'59" East. It is 365 km southwest from Ho Chi Minh City and approximately 60 km from Rach Gia, the capital city of the Kien Giang Province. The core zone of UMTNP covers an area of 8,038 ha, recognised as a national historical site (Biggs, 2005; Kien Giang Province People's Committee, 2005), an Asian Heritage Park and Ramsar site.

U Minh is a flat region with average elevation of 0.5 m above mean sea level. Soils in the region were formed by deposits of alluvial sediments from the Mekong River 10,000 years ago (Hashimoto, 2001). After initially trapping sediment to form soils, mangrove forests deposited large amounts of organic material gradually raising the ground level so that it was no longer influenced by sea water. Under the now dominant fresh water condition, melaleuca forest was established replacing the mangrove forest while continuing to accrete organic material to the developing soil forming two main soil types – acid sulphate soils and peatland (Care, 2001; Hashimoto, 2001).

#### Climate and hydrological conditions

Located in the highest rainfall area in the Mekong Delta, U Minh region receives an average of 2,200–2,400 mm annually, but the rainfall is unevenly distributed with a pronounced dry season (from December to April) receiving only about 5 per cent (110–120 mm) of the total annual rainfall, while the evaporation in this period is very high (587–614 mm) due to high daily temperatures reaching to 38°C (Huong, 2011).

The hydrology of the region is characterised by wet seasonal inundation and surface soil drying during the dry season (Ngan & Hien, 1987; Bao, 2011; Anh, 2013). This natural condition is appropriate for establishment and evolution of the wetland ecosystem dominated by melaleuca (*Melaleuca cajuputi*) forests and peatland formation and accumulation (Quynh, 2011). However, it was artificially changed by the creation of an extensive canal system for crop irrigation, transportation and rural development (Biggs, 2005; 2011; Dzung & Co, 2011).

#### History of forest loss and fragmentation

In the 1930s, melaleuca forest in the U Minh region covered an area of about 142,000 ha (Dzung, 2002; Biggs, 2005). As one of the three biggest bases for the revolutionary forces in South Viet Nam during the Indochina wars, the forest in U Minh was damaged by Agent Orange and Napalm bombs in the second Indochina war (Biggs, 2005), but approximately 100,000 ha of natural melaleuca forest remained until 1975 (Dzung, 2002). After this time, the forest was rapidly cleared to meet the demand for economic development, and agricultural and aquaculture expansion (Dzung, 2002; Biggs, 2005). In 1978, the Kien Giang Province dug an outer dyke and associated canals with a 60 km perimeter to enclose and thereby protect the last area of 21,800 ha of natural melaleuca forest. However, this effort was not effective in stopping illegal deforestation. In 1992, in parallel with establishing the U Minh Thuong Nature Reserve, Kien Giang provincial authority continued to build a second 38 km of inner dykes and canals that ran parallel to the outer dyke (Figure 1). This new dyke system also defined the park's boundary, aimed at strictly conserving the last remaining area of 8,038 ha of wetland and melaleuca forest under the National Protected Area system (Dzung, 2002).

#### Pressure from land use conversion

The area between the inner dyke and outer dyke, an area of 14,192 ha, was managed as a buffer zone around the core protected area zone. Most people live along the 22 canals in the buffer zone running between the canals of the inner and outer dyke (Dzung, 2002). In the buffer zone, each household was allocated an average area of 4.0 ha of land by the province and mandated to maintain 2.0 ha for melaleuca plantation, 1.0 ha for fish ponds and 1.0 ha crop production. In 2000, there were 3,022 households with 16,227 people living in the buffer zone (Chandler et al., 2000) and by 2013 there were 3,675 households and 18,852 people (Tuyen, 2013). Although these households received provincial government support for socio-economic development and livelihood improvement, many are still poor forestdependant people (Dang, 2009; Tuyen, 2013). This posed a significant challenge to the biodiversity conservation of the park due to illegal access for wildlife hunting, fishing and collecting honey (Biggs, 2005; Dang, 2009; Tuyen, 2013; Nuwer & Bell, 2014).

#### Impacts of forest fire and inappropriate water management

Development of an intensive canal system surrounding a small melaleuca forest area altered the natural hydrological condition in the park and surrounding areas. In the dry season, the depth to the underground water table increased due to the large demand for irrigation and natural evaporation. This resulted in drying out of the peaty soil and made it prone to wildfire (Dzung & Co, 2011; Bao, 2011; Anh, 2013).

In March 2002, only two months after the Nature Reserve was upgraded to National Park status, a devastating fire occurred destroying approximately 3,000 ha of melaleuca forest that represented 80 per



Figure 1. Map of the dense and extensive canal system established by Kien Giang Province in the wetland of the core zone of UMTNP and surrounding buffer zone.

cent of the primary forest on the peatland of the park (Dzung & Co, 2011; Thinh, 2011). This fire not only significantly reduced the natural forest area but also destroyed wetland habitat and bird nesting sites (Sanders, 2002). There was also long-term environmental damage to the soil and freshwater ecosystem resulting from the large volume of salt water pumped into the park for firefighting (Sanders, 2002; Dzung & Co, 2011).

This fire event was considered a national disaster and as such the central government, province and conservation organisations paid it great attention. The fear of a repeat



Degraded U Minh Thuong wetland under the permanent, deep flooded condition with extensive floating plants (foreground), and few trees surviving © Chu Van Cuong

fire led to an urgent but ill-considered management decision from the central government to keep a permanent and deep flood regime in the park through upgrading the existing dyke and dam systems. There were no more forest fires, but the park's ecosystems were affected, particularly the melaleuca forest and avifauna (Dang, 2009; Huong, 2011).

Retaining a permanent, flooded water level higher than the normal conditions for fire prevention negatively impacted on the growth, development and regeneration of the normally seasonally inundated melaleuca forest and other wetland habitats. Many dead seedlings and trees were observed in the park along with water pollution with high nutrient concentration as a consequence of ecosystem and forest degradation (Dang, 2009; Thinh, 2011). This quickly led to a bloom of floating exotic plants such as water hyacinth (Eichhornia crassipes) and water lettuce (Pistia stratiotes) in the canals and open water surface areas in the park. Dense mats of floating exotic plants disturbed the wetland's food web resulting in the death of aquatic species, especially fish (Vinh et al., 2002; Dang, 2009). High flood water levels coupled with the decline of food sources negatively affected wildlife, including birds which rely on the wetland ecosystem for feeding and nesting (Dang, 2009).

# Improved water management practice in UMTNP

Evidence of the wetland degradation in UMTNP from the inappropriate water management regime was presented and discussed at the National Workshop in 2009 (Cuong et al., 2011). The workshop provided an opportunity for the decision makers from central and provincial government, ministries, park managers and scientists to talk about the future management solution to achieve biodiversity restoration and fire management. The official decision to revise the water management system allowed an immediate and permanent draining of the flood water out of the park (Figure 2).

Restoration of the hydrological conditions in the park towards the situation prevailing before the fire in 2002 (see Supplementary Online Material Box 1) enabled recovery of the native vegetation and wetland habitats. This attracted the return of birds to the park for foraging and breeding.

#### **METHODS**

This bird survey is a 'repeat' of previous surveys undertaken in 2009 and 2011, covering the same areas and bird colony. Other surveys were conducted before and after the fire between 1999 and 2002 by Care International (Hoa, 2002). The survey reported here was conducted in 3 weeks from 27 May to 14 June 2013 by two principal researchers from UMTNP who also undertook the previous surveys. Bird species richness in four main habitats of melaleuca forest, open wetland, grassland and nearby buffer zone was recorded using Timed Species Counts and Point Count methods (Pomeroy & Tengecho, 1986). The number of water birds and populations in the bird colony were investigated using the counting methods from the



**Figure 2. Water level changes in the canals in UMTNP after the fire event in 2002<sup>1</sup>.** Figure 2a shows that the water level was reduced to approximately 90 cm below ground level as most water in the park was being used for forest firefighting. The water level in the park increased by the end of 2002 under the government decision to flood the park for fire prevention. However, flooding did not occur till the end of 2004 due to the time taken to complete the water management system. Permanent and high water levels occurred from 2005-2009 (Figure 2b) after dyke and gate building was completed allowing retention of all rain water in the UMTNP. Figure 2c shows changes of flooding condition when flood water in the park was released under improved water management practices since 2010. Under the new water management scheme, only a certain amount (not all) of the rain water in the rainy season was kept in the park and this created an appropriate (not deep) seasonal flooding in the park (from July to January). The flood water level gradually reduces through evaporation and lateral flow through the dyke walls to outside the park (which had a lower water table), in the hot and dry months and creates a non-flooding season (February to June).



# Figure 3. Sites of bird survey in UMTNP and nearby Buffer Zone

observation towers (Figure 3). Bird species were identified and named based on guide books (Quy & Cu, 1999; Robson, 2011; Hung, 2012). Recorded data for bird richness from the survey was compared with previous surveys in 2011 and particularly the 2009 survey to assess how the new water management regime impacted on the bird species richness of UMTNP and the buffer zone.

#### **Timed Species Counts**

Timed Species Counts (TSC) were undertaken in 32 sample plots of ca. 0.5 ha (50 x 100 m) that were set up in the 2009 and 2011 surveys in two main habitats of melaleuca forest and open wetland in the core area of UMTNP (16 plots for each survey habitat). TSC was undertaken in the morning between 06:00–10:00 and in the afternoon between 15:00–18:30. To conduct TSC, the observers walk at a slow pace through the study area for one hour and actively search for birds. During the first ten minutes of the walk all bird species seen are recorded, but only once. In the second ten minutes, all bird species not seen in the first ten minutes are recorded but, again, each different species is only recorded once and this process is repeated for each of the subsequent ten minute blocks until an hour watch is completed.

#### Point Count

The Point Count method was used in the grassland habitat because it was impossible for researchers to walk through this habitat to carry out the TSC method. Thirty point count locations were set up with a 3-metre high aluminium ladder observation platform. Bird species were identified and the number of individuals that were observed within 10 minutes at each counting point recorded in both the core zone and nearby buffer zone.

#### Counting populations of specific groups

This method was applied to specific groups of birds such as crane and other water bird species which use the wetland of the park for overnight roosting and breeding. It was used to count stork and night resting waterfowl species and their populations in the bird colony inside the melaleuca forest.

#### Counting the stork population

The population of storks (*Ciconiidae*) was counted four times a day, on 3 continuous days from a 13 m high observation tower in the core zone of the park. The researchers used binoculars to count lesser adjutant (*Leptoptilos javanicus*), the main stork species, from the observation tower when they started soaring out of the forest between 10:00–12:00.

#### Counting night resting water birds

Water birds were counted in the bird colony inside the melaleuca forest from two main flying directions at two 10 m high observation towers. Counting of birds flying into the colony was conducted over 3 consecutive days, with 3 periods of 15 minutes' observation followed by a 30 minute break between 16:00–18:30 when birds return to the colony and stay overnight after daily foraging elsewhere. Birds were identified and recorded by species name and the total number of individuals for each counting.

### RESULTS

#### **Bird diversity**

One hundred and fifty-nine bird species belonging to 51 families were recorded in the core zone and buffer zone of UMTNP. Of these, 72 species are waterfowls as classified under the Ramsar Convention, 24 species are wetland forest dependent and 25 are listed as threatened species.

Cotton pygmy-goose (*Nettapus coromandelianus*) was a first time record in UMTNP. Another five previously recorded species, Indian cormorant (*Phalacrocorax*)

#### Van Cuong et al.

fuscicollis), greater painted-snipe (Rostratula benghalensis), common snipe (Gallinago gallinago), red turtle dove (Streptopelia tranquebarica) (Safford, 2000) and vinous-breasted starling (Acridotheres burmannicus) (Buckton et al., 1999), which were not observed in the previous surveys in 2003, 2009 and 2011, were found in UMTNP in 2013. Significantly, three threatened bird species: Oriental darter (Anhinga melanogaster), Asian openbill (Anastomus oscitans) and spot-billed pelican (Pelecanus philippensis) which were only observed in the buffer zone between 2004 and 2009 have now returned to the park for feeding and breeding.

Within the core zone of UMTNP, open wetland was the most attractive and appropriate bird habitat. It supported the largest species richness (121 species in 2013) of which 17 species were on the threatened list of IUCN (2012) and the Vietnam Red Book (Ministry of Science and Technology, 2007). In contrast, melaleuca forest had the lowest bird species richness but it was home to the largest number of specialist bird species (22 species) which are only adapted to this narrow and typical habitat.

The buffer zone provides feeding and resting habitat for 97 bird species, including 9 threatened species. Notably, Oriental darter, Asian openbill and spot-billed pelican are three large-sized threatened bird species facing local poaching. The close proximity and similarity of the habitat characteristics shared between the buffer zone and two habitats (open wetland and grassland) in the core zone of the park resulted in a large proportion of bird species (95 out of 159 species) that chose both the UMTNP and buffer zone as habitats for finding food and resting (Supplementary Online Material, Figure S1).



Oriental darters (Anhinga melanogaster) feeding their chicks. © Tran Van Thang

The number of bird species in the buffer zone increased from 95 species in 2003 to 97 species in 2009 and then was unchanged in the 2011 and 2013 surveys. In contrast, bird species richness in the core zone of UMTNP changed following the hydrological condition over the whole period of 2003-2013 (Figure 4). The permanent and deep flooding scheme applied in the park between 2005 and 2009 led to decreased bird species richness (by 27 species in grassland, 19 species in open wetland and 11 species in melaleuca forest) in 2009 (Figure 5). Nearly two years after the application of the new water management scheme that allowed the release of flood water out of the park, the survey results in 2011 showed that bird species richness generally increased. The most recent survey which recorded the cumulative total of species detected over a 10-day assessment in 2013 found the number of bird species increased by 47 in open wetland, by 29 species in grassland and 19 species in melaleuca forest compared to the 2009 assessment.

#### Bird colony and waterfowl population

Our study recorded a maximum daily number over a 3day counting period of 19,164 birds comprising 16 water bird species which rested overnight and were breeding in the 10 ha area of the bird colony located in the southeast of the core zone. Of these 16 species, little cormorant (*Microcarbo niger*), little egret (*Egretta garzetta*), black-crowned night heron (*Nycticorax nycticorax*), great egret (*Ardea alba*) and intermediate egret (*Ardea intermedia*) were the five main species



Figure 4. Species composition in each habitat of the core zone of UMTNP and buffer zone



Black drongo (Dicrurus macrocercus). © Sharon Brown



Figure 5. Changes in bird diversity in UMTNP and nearby buffer zone from 2003 until 2013. The histogram shows species richness in different habitats in the park and buffer zone after the wildfire in 2002; at the end of a permanent, artificial flooding period (2005-2009) just before an improved water management regime was applied in late 2009. The surveys in 2011 and 2013 were conducted as the melaleuca, open wetland and grassland habitats recovered much of their original ecosystem characteristics (pre the fire and flooding regime) commonly observed in the colony (details in Supplementary Online Material, Figure S2).

Waterfowl populations in the bird colony changed following the wildfire and water flooding events. In 2001, 4,418 water birds of 15 species were recorded in the colony (Figure 6). The fire event in 2002 destroyed the colony and nesting places that consequently led to a small decrease in the number of waterfowl species from 15 to 13 with a total bird population decrease from 4,418 to 1,131 birds in 2002. After the fire, all small bird colonies merged into one large colony coupled with an increased area of open wetland that was created with favourable shallows and suitable feeding area as the flooding regime had not yet been instituted. This led to an increase in the bird population of the colony in 2003 to 4,875 waterfowls and a much larger increase in 2004 to a maximum daily total of 23,400 water birds (Figure 6). However, after the long flooding period was instituted in 2005, the waterfowl population decreased by 39 per cent in 2009 compared to 2004 even though the number of species was unchanged. When flood water in the park was released from early 2010 under the new management regime, the water bird population in the colony increased by 26 per cent in 2011 and 33 per cent in 2013 over 2009 levels (Figure 6).

#### **Conservation values**

Twenty-five species have significant conservation issues (Supplementary Online Material, Table S1), being listed either on the International Union for Conservation of Nature Red List (9 species including 2 Vulnerable and 7 Near-threatened) (IUCN, 2012), in the Viet Nam Red Book of 2007 (1 Endangered and 6 Vulnerable species) (Ministry of Science and Technology, 2007), in the CITES Convention and listed under Decree 32/2006/ ND-CP of the Vietnamese Government (11 species) on management of endangered and rare forest plants and animals in Viet Nam (Government of Viet Nam, 2006). Wetlands International (2002) has established criteria for the rareness of water fowl species based on the proportion of species in a habitat as a proportion of the estimated Southeast Asia and world populations. A threshold value of a population of >1 per cent is classified as a significantly large population and hence one of interest in terms of species survival and genetic diversity. Seven species: glossy ibis (Plegadis falcinellus), black bittern (Dupetor flavicollis), purple heron (Ardea purpurea), great egret, intermediate egret, spot-billed pelican and little cormorant in UMTNP reach this significant species level.

#### DISCUSSION

The diversity of bird species in UMTNP is a reflection of the diversity of habitat types, from melaleuca forest to



Figure 6. Change of number of waterfowl species and their total population in the bird colony from 2001-2013

open wetland, grassland and diversified food sources in the buffer zone. As one of eight legally established inland wetland protected areas in the Mekong Delta, UMTNP plays an important role in providing safe habitat and refuge for birds and wildlife in this rapidly changing wetland landscape. Of the 247 bird species recorded in the Mekong Delta (Buckton & Safford, 2004), UMTNP is home to two-thirds of them. Significantly, the park is home to two-thirds (25 out of 37 species) of the total number of threatened bird species recorded in the Mekong region. However, the disturbance from forest clearance, wildfire and especially the subsequent human imposition of changed hydrological conditions through inappropriate flood water management for fire prevention, negatively impacted bird diversity.

Hydrology plays a vital role in the maintenance of wetland structure and functions (Hollis, 1998; Euliss et al., 2004; Zalewski et al., 2016) and this in turn affects birds that use wetland habitats for feeding, resting and breeding. Like other conservation wetlands in the Mekong Delta (see e.g. Torell et al., 2003; Anh, 2013; Quan et al., 2018), the natural flooding regimes of UMTNP wetland were considerably modified by the establishment of hydraulic infrastructure such as dykes, sluice gates and canals for water management and fire prevention. Fear of wildfire and lack of knowledge about wetland hydrology and dynamics led to inappropriate management decisions which established a permanent flooding regime in the park. The consequence of inappropriate hydrology management practice often leads to wetland restoration failure (Mitsch & Wilson, 1996), and greatly impacts on wetland birds (Bancroft et al., 2002; O'Neal et al., 2008; Hoover, 2009) and UMTNP is no exception.



Wetland avifauna is often negatively impacted as a consequence of long-term flooding regime (Kingsford & Thomas, 2004) and this is the case of UMTNP. A permanent and high flood level established and maintained in the park over a long period from 2005–2009 led to further degradation of the habitats and food sources post the fire. Especially, the high level flood water negatively affected the prey hunting capacity of water birds (Arengo & Baldassarre, 1999; Gawlik, 2002). Consequently, many birds were forced to move out of the park leading to the reduction in bird populations during the flooding regime management period.

When the wetland condition was improved from 2010 by allowing the flood water to move out of the park by lowering the canal water level height in order to develop a shallow and seasonally inundated condition, this provided the opportunity for wetland habitats and native vegetation to recover. The survey in 2013 revealed a significant increase in the growth rate of melaleuca trees and the establishment of a newly regenerated seedling population with a density of 320-860 seedlings/ha from virtually no trees in the forest area surviving the flooding regime (Thang, 2013). Available food sources provided by re-established natural vegetation apparently then made the wetland habitats attractive destinations again for birds (Davis & Bidwell, 2008; Matthews & Endress, 2008). In the case of UMTNP, bird species richness generally increased in the park and typical habitats, and particularly increased

in the open wetland areas. This indicates the importance of UMTNP as a safe habitat for birds, being surrounded by the buffer zone habitats which have considerable human disturbance and development activities.

#### CONCLUSIONS AND MANAGEMENT IMPLICATIONS

The case of UMTNP shows that wetland habitats in the Lower Mekong Delta need the seasonal change of flood water height and a dry season without floodwater, as now occurs again in the natural wetlands of UMTNP, to enable their unique habitats, especially melaleuca forests, to survive and prosper. The positive response of avifauna to the changes in U Minh Thuong indicates the need to understand how the 'normal' wetland processes operate in support of biodiversity conservation before modifying them for fire management. The attempt to save the melaleuca forest failed because the permanent flooded condition killed the trees. Thus, wetland conservation policy and management practice needed to be changed from focusing on an attempt to preserve tree species from fire based on a deep and permanent flood regime, to applying an integrated water and fire prevention strategy.

Fire should be used as an ecological management tool for promoting forest succession and regeneration, and maintaining and conserving a healthy wetland. Although fire is an important ecological factor affecting the development of, and succession within, the melaleuca forest ecosystem (Ngan & Hien, 1987), its use is prohibited in protected area management in Viet Nam. Thus, implementation of an integrated fire and wetland water management strategy enabling prescribed burning, as was discussed and concluded to be beneficial in the participatory national workshop (Cuong et al., 2011; Quynh, 2011), would facilitate forest regeneration and reproduction that provide food sources for seed eating birds (de Szalay & Resh, 1997). Controlled burning helps to remove and/or decrease plant litter, woody or invasive species, particularly fireprone grass material such as *Phragmites vallatoria* that grows quickly and accumulates under appropriate tropical conditions, and controlled burning is likely to modify the plant species composition and may develop a habitat that better supports wetland birds (Kirby et al., 1988; Brennan et al., 2005).

It is necessary to maintain the habitat diversity and appropriate habitat ratio of melaleuca forest, open wetland and grassland within the park for avifauna and wildlife conservation. Although grassland and open wetland are important habitats to support both bird diversity and species of high conservation value, these two habitats are often considered as 'waste land' and are under high risk of disturbance from invasive plants and management intervention such as reforestation. Given that planting trees could assist in restoring wetland vegetation and control exotic plants and grasses, this activity paradoxically often increases the risk of habitat loss and disturbance, and displaces birds (Allan et al., 1997). Consequently, birds will be forced to forage outside of the park (e.g., buffer zones, agricultural and aquaculture land) where they are subject to poaching and could become endangered.

Protection of birds in the protected area wetlands is a highly recommended management strategy (Erwin, 2002), but conservation efforts need to be implemented at landscape level in the park and surrounding agricultural buffer zones. Available food sources from diverse crops and aquaculture production in the buffer zone may make it more attractive for birds, including threatened species to find food there. In contrast to the strict protection level in the park, birds in the buffer zone and farming areas are often under threat from local poaching activity. Thus, conservation in a catchment encompassing a national park or protected area requires implementation of an awareness programme for local communities which outlines the importance of conservation to the overall ecosystem biodiversity and sustainability, and thus the communities' economic long -term wellbeing.

#### SUPPLEMENTARY ONLINE MATERIAL

Box 1 Improved Water management regime in U Minh Thuong National Park

Figure S1. Multidimensional scaling following the presence and absence of bird species in 5 different habitats



Figure S2. Number of significant bird colony waterfowl species present at the peak in May 2013

Table S1. Bird species of conservation importance in U Minh Thuong National Park

#### ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

We thank the GIZ/DFAT Conservation and Development of the Kien Giang Biosphere Reserve Project for funding this study.

#### **ABOUT THE AUTHORS**

**Chu Van Cuong** completed a PhD degree at the School of Earth and Environmental Sciences, The University of Queensland, Australia. His working experience and research interests focus on National Park and Biosphere Reserve management, effectiveness evaluation, forest restoration and community development (ORCID id: 0000-0001-9276-470X).

**Peter Dart** is Honorary Associate Professor at the School of Agriculture and Food Sciences, The University of Queensland. His research involves the management of Protected Areas and Biosphere Reserves particularly in the Philippines and Viet Nam. He also works on the management of coastal zones and stabilising mangrove forests and their restoration.

**Sharon Brown** was former Chief Technical Advisor of the Conservation and Development of the Kien Giang Biosphere Reserve Project. Dr Brown has over 20 years' working experience on forestry, protected areas management and community development in Viet Nam, Philippines, Cambodia and Laos.

**Tran Van Thang** is a department head of U Minh Thuong National Park, Viet Nam. He has over 15 years' working and research experience in biodiversity conservation, bird monitoring, forest management and restoration, wetland hydrology and peatland management, and community development.

**Vo Thi Minh Le** is Deputy Director of the Center for Greater Mekong Subregion Cooperation Studies, Institute of World Economics and Politics, Viet Nam Academy of Social Sciences. Holding a PhD degree in International Economics and a Master's degree in Development Practice, she has been involved in many research projects on sustainable economic management models and development, trade, investment, environmental management and water security, and monitoring disaster risks in the Mekong region.

#### REFERENCES

- Allan, D.G., Harrison, J.A., Navarro, R.A., van Wilgen, B.W. and Thompson, M.W. (1997). The impact of commercial afforestation on bird populations in Mpumalanga Province, South Africa – Insights from Bird-Atlas data. *Biological Conservation*, 79(2-3): 173–185. https://doi.org/10.1016/ S0006-3207(96)00098-5.
- Anh, V.T. (2013). Enhancing forest fire prevention measures for U Minh peatland areas of Kien Giang and Ca Mau. Viet Nam component report: Rehabilitation and Sustainable Use of Peatland Forests in Southeast Asia Project.
- Arengo, F. and Baldassarre, G.A. (1999). Resource variability and conservation of American Flamingos in coastal wetlands of Yucatan, Mexico. *Journal of Wildlife Management*, 63(4): 1201–1212. https://www.jstor.org/stable/3802838.
- Bancroft, G.T., Gawlik, D.E. and Rutchey, K. (2002). Distribution of wading birds relative to vegetation and water depths in the Northern Everglades of Florida, USA. *Waterbirds*, 25: 265– 277. https://doi.org/10.1675/1524-4695(2002)025 [0265:DOWBRT]2.0.CO;2.
- Bao, T.Q. (2011). Study appropriate flooding level for fire prevention and maintenance melaleuca forest development in U Minh Thuong and U Minh Ha National Parks. Institute of Forest Ecology and Environment.
- Biggs, D. (2005). Managing a rebel landscape: Conservation, pioneers, and the revolutionary past in the U Minh forest, Viet Nam. *Environmental History*, 10(3): 448–476. https:// www.jstor.org/stable/3985999.
- Biggs, D. (2011). Fixing the Delta: History and the Politics of Hydraulic Infrastructure Development and Conservation in the Mekong Delta. In: M.A. Stewart and P.A. Coclanis (eds.), *Environmental Change and Agricultural Sustainability in the Mekong Delta*, pp. 35–44. Advances in Global Change Research 45.
- Bobbink, R., Whigham, D.F., Beltman, B. and Verhoeven, J.T.A. (2006). Wetland functioning in relation to biodiversity conservation and restoration. In: R. Bobbink, B. Beltman, J.T.A. Verhoeven and D.F. Whigham (eds.) Wetlands: Functioning, biodiversity conservation, and restoration, pp. 1– 12., Berlin, Heidelberg, New York: Springer.
- Brennan, E.K., Smith, L.M., Haukos, D.A. and LaGrange, T.G. (2005). Short-term response of wetland birds to prescribed burning in rainwater basin wetlands. *Wetlands*, 25(3): 667– 674. https://doi.org/10.1672/0277-5212(2005)025 [0667:SROWBT]2.0.CO;2
- Buckton, S.T. and Safford, R.J. (2004). The avifauna of the Vietnamese Mekong Delta. *Bird Conservation International*, 14(4): 279–322. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0959270904000346.
- Buckton, S.T., Cu, N., Quynh, H.Q. and Tu, N.D. (1999). The conservation of key wetland sites in the Mekong Delta. Hanoi: BirdLife International Vietnam Programme.
- Care (2001). Soil mapping, land evaluation and land use planning of the Buffer Zone of the U Minh Thuong Natural Reserve.U Minh Thuong Natural Reserve Conservation and Community Development Project.
- Chandler, G., Yen, N.T.H., Larsen, I.B., Tri, H.M., Phong, V.V. and Hoa, N.P.B. (2000). Socio-economic appraisal on the community surrounding the U Minh Thuong Natural Reserve 1999–2000. U Minh Thuong Nature Reserve Conservation and Community development Project.

- Cuong, C.V., Hai, L.T. and Giang, L.T. (2011). Conservation and sustainable development of the U Minh Thuong National Park. Ho Chi Minh City, Viet Nam: Agriculture Publishing House.
- Dang, N.X. (2009). Rapid assessment of flora and terrestrial animals in Key Areas of the Kien Giang Biosphere Reserve. German Technical Cooperation and Kien Giang Biosphere Reserve Project.
- Davidson N.C. (2014). How much wetland has the world lost? Long-term and recent trends in global wetland area. *Marine* and *Freshwater Research*, 65(10): 934–941. https:// doi.org/10.1071/MF14173.
- Davis, C.A. and Bidwell, J.R. (2008). Response of aquatic invertebrates to vegetation management and agriculture. *Wetlands*, 28(3): 793–805. https://doi.org/10.1672/07-156.1.
- de Szalay, F.A. and Resh, V.H. (1997). Responses of wetland invertebrates and plants important in waterfowl diets to burning and mowing of emergent vegetation. *Wetlands*, 17(1): 149–156. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF03160726.
- Dzung, P.V. (2002). Introduction to U Minh Thuong National Park. In: N.X. Vinh, N.X. Dang and H. Sasaki (eds.) Workshop on enhancement of knowledge and conservation of otters in U Minh Thuong National Park, pp. 61–66. Kien Giang, Viet Nam.
- Dzung, P.T. and Co, P.N. (2011). Environmental changes after forest fire at U Minh Ha and U Minh Thuong and recommendations for forest restoration. In: C.V. Cuong, L.T. Hai and L.T. Giang (eds.) *Conservation and Sustainable Development of U Minh Thuong National Park*, pp. 95–109. Ho Chi Minh City, Viet Nam: Agriculture Publishing House.
- Erwin, R.M. (2002). Integrated management of waterbirds: Beyond the conventional. *Waterbirds*, 25(suppl. 2): 5–12. http:// www.jstor.org/stable/1522447.
- Euliss, N.H. Jr., LaBaugh, J.W., Fredrickson, L.H., Musher, D.M., Laubhan, M.K., Swanson, G.A., Winter, T.C., Rosenberry, D.O. and Nelson, R.D. (2004). The wetland continuum: A conceptual framework for interpreting biological studies. *Wetlands*, 24(2): 448–458. https://doi.org/10.1672/0277-5212 (2004)024[0448:TWCACF]2.0.CO;2.
- Gawlik, D.E. (2002). The effects of prey availability on the numerical response of wading birds. *Ecological Monographs*, 72(3): 329–346. https://doi.org/10.1890/0012-9615(2002)072 [0329:TEOPAO]2.0.CO;2.
- Government of Viet Nam (2006). The Government Decree No. 32/2006/ND-CP on Management of Endangered, Rare and Precious Plants and Animals. Ha Noi.
- Hashimoto, T.R. (2001). Environmental Issues and Recent Infrastructure Development in the Mekong Delta: Review, analysis and recommendations with particular reference to large scale water control projects and the development of coastal areas. Working Paper No. 4. Australia: Australian Mekong Resource Centre, University of Sydney..
- Hawa, A., Azhar, B., Top, M.M. and Zubaid, A. (2016). Depauperate avifauna in tropical peat swamp forests following logging and conversion to oil palm agriculture: Evidence from mist-netting data. *Wetlands*, 36(5): 899–908. https://doi.org/10.1007/s13157-016-0802-3
- Hoa, N.P.B. (2002). *Bird monitoring report*. U Minh Thuong National Park and Community Development Project.
- Hoang, N.H., Dargusch, P., Moss P. and Aziz, A.A. (2017). Landuse change and socio-ecological drivers of wetland

conversion in Ha Tien Plain, Mekong Delta, Viet Nam. *Land Use Policy*, 64: 101–113. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.landusepol.2017.02.019

- Hollis, G.E. (1998). Hydrological data for wetland management. Water and Environment Journal, 12(1): 9–17. https:// doi.org/10.1111/j.17476593.1998.tb00140.x
- Hoover, J.P. (2009). Effects of hydrologic restoration on birds breeding in forested wetlands. *Wetlands*, 29(2): 563–573. https://doi.org/10.1672/08-75.1
- Hung, L.M. (2012). *Introduction of Viet Nam birds*. Ha Noi, Viet Nam: Natural Science and Technology Publishing House.
- Huong, L.H. (2011). Water management plan for conservation and development of U Minh Thuong National Park. In: C.V. Cuong, L.T. Hai and L.T. Giang (eds.) Conservation and Sustainable Development of U Minh Thuong National Park, pp. 138–151. Ho Chi Minh City, Viet Nam: Agriculture Publishing House.
- IUCN (2012). IUCN Red List Categories and Criteria: Version 3.1. Second edition. International Union for Conservation of Nature: Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, UK.
- Kien Giang Province People's Committee (2005). *Kien Giang Biosphere Reserve*. Proposal report to UNESCO.
- Kingsford, R.T. and Thomas, R.F. (2004). Destruction of wetlands and waterbird populations by dams and irrigation on the Murrumbidgee River in arid Australia. *Environmental Management*, 34 (3): 383–396. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00267 -004-0250-3
- Kirby, R.E., Lewis, S.J. and Sexon, T.J. (1988). Fire in North American wetlands ecosystems and fire-wildlife relations: An annotated bibliography. Washington, DC, USA: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Office of Biological Services. FWS/OBS-88/1.
- Matthews, J.W. and Endress, A.G. (2008). Performance criteria, compliance success, and vegetation development in compensatory mitigation wetlands. *Environmental Management*, 41(1): 130–141. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00267-007-9002-5.
- Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (2005). *Ecosystems and Human Well-being: Wetlands and Water Synthesis.* Washington, DC: World Resources Institute.
- Ministry of Science and Technology (2007). *Red data book of Viet Nam. Volume 1, Hanoi: Animal.* Science and Technics Publishing House.
- Mitsch, W.J. and Wilson, R.F. (1996). Improving the success of wetland creation and restoration with know-how, time, and self -design. *Ecological Applications*, 6: 77–83. https:// doi.org/10.2307/2269554.
- Ngan, P.T. and Hien, C.Q. (1987). Viet Nam inundated forests. Hanoi: Education Publishing House.
- Nuwer, R. and Bell, D. (2014). Identifying and quantifying the threats to biodiversity in the U Minh peat swamp forests of the Mekong Delta, Viet Nam. *Oryx*, 48(1): 88–94. https:// doi.org/10.1017/S0030605312000865.
- O'Neal, B.J., Heske, E.J. and Stafford, J.D. (2008). Waterbird response to wetlands restored through the conservation reserve enhancement program. *Journal of Wildlife Management*, 72(3): 654–664. https://doi.org/10.2193/2007-165.
- Pomeroy, D.E. and Tengecho, B. (1986). Studies of birds in semiarid areas of Kenya. III: The use of 'Time species count' for studying regional avifaunas. *Journal of Tropical Ecology*, 2(3): 231–247. https://www.jstor.org/stable/2559854.

- Quan, N.H., Toan, T.Q., Dang, P.D., Phuong, N.L., Anh, T.T.H., Quang, N.X., Quoc, D.P., Quoi, L.P., Hanington, P. and Sea, W.B. (2018). Conservation of the Mekong Delta wetlands through hydrological management. *Ecological Research*, 33: 87–103 DOI 10.1007/s11284-017-1545-1.
- Quy, V. and Cu, N. (1999). *Bird list of Viet Nam*. Ha Noi: Agriculture Publishing House.
- Quynh, V.V. (2011). Points of views and water management solutions for fire prevention in U Minh Thuong National Park. In: C.V. Cuong, L.T. Hai and L.T. Giang (eds.) Conservation and Sustainable Development of U Minh Thuong National Park, pp. 131–137. Ho Chi Minh City, Viet Nam: Agriculture Publishing House.
- Robson, C. (2011). *A field guide to the birds of South East Asia*. London: New Holland Publishers.
- Safford, R. (2000). A manual for U Minh Thuong: Habitat and biodiversity monitoring.
- Sanders, B.M. (2002). Fire Incident Assessment: U Minh Ha Forest and U Minh Thuong National Park Ca Mau and Kien Giang Provinces, Viet Nam.
- Thang, T.V. (2013). Vegetation survey in U Minh Thuong National Park. Technical report to Conservation and Development of the Kien Giang Biosphere Reserve.
- <u>Thinh, P.T. (2003)</u>. Findings from Wetlands Classification and Inventory of Wetlands/Aquatic Ecosystem in the Mekong Basin Viet Nam. Mekong River Commission.
- Thinh, P.T. (2011). Biodiversity of U Minh Thuong National Park and solutions to conserve and manage Melaleuca forest on peat land. In: C.V. Cuong, L.T. Hai and L.T. Giang (eds.) *Conservation and Sustainable Development of U Minh Thuong National Park*, pp. 33–50. Ho Chi Minh City, Viet Nam: Agriculture Publishing House.

- Torell, M., Salamanca, A.M. and Ratner, B.D. (2003). *Wetlands management in Viet Nam: Issues and perspectives*. Penang: World Fish Center.
- Tuyen, L.H. (2013). Socio-economic situation of the households in the Buffer Zone of U Minh Thuong National Park.
- Viet Nam Environment Protection Agency (2005). Evaluation of multi-sectoral policy, law and legal framework for wetland management in Viet Nam. Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment.
- Vinh, N.X., Dan, P.Q. and Tuyen, L.H. (2002). Otters and exotic plants in U Minh Thuong National Park. In: N.X. Vinh, N.X, Dang and H, Sasaki (eds.). *Enhancement of Knowledge and Conservation of Otters in U Minh Thuong National Park*, pp. 75–81. Viet Nam.
- Wetlands International (2002). Waterbird Population Estimates. Third Edition. S. Delany and D. Scott (eds.) Wetlands International Global Series No. 12. Wageningen, The Netherlands: Wetlands International.
- Yule, C.M. (2010). Loss of biodiversity and ecosystem functioning in Indo-Malayan peat swamp forests. *Biodiversity and Conservation*, 19(2): 393–409. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10531 -008-9510-5
- Zalewski, M., McClain, M. and Eslamian, S. (2016). Ecohydrology – the background for the integrative sustainability science. *Ecohydrology and Hydrobiology*, 16(2): 71–73. https:// doi.org/10.1016/j.ecohyd.2016. 04.003
- Zedler, J.B. and Kercher, S. (2005). Wetland Resources: Status, Trends, Ecosystem Services, and Restorability. Annual Review of Environment and Resources, 30: 39–74. https:// doi.org/10.1146/annurev.energy.30.050504.144248

#### RESUMEN

El Parque Nacional U Minh Thuong, uno de los dos humedales turbosos de Melaleuca más grandes que quedan en Vietnam, es un área de gran importancia para la conservación de las aves debido a sus diversos hábitats de humedales. Un devastador incendio forestal en 2002 dio lugar a un nuevo régimen de control de incendios basado en un régimen permanente de inundación impuesto en grandes áreas del parque que provocó una degradación extrema de los humedales y los bosques. Esto a su vez afectó de manera negativa tanto la diversidad como las poblaciones de especies de aves. En 2009, el Gobierno de Vietnam y la Autoridad del Parque adoptaron una práctica mejorada de gestión del agua. Un estudio realizado cuatro años más tarde registró dos nuevas especies en la lista de 159 especies de aves que habitan en el parque. De estas, 25 especies amenazadas utilizaban los humedales y la zona de amortiguamiento adyacente como hábitat para su desarrollo y alimentación. Con base en el mayor registro ocurrido durante tres días consecutivos, la población de aves acuáticas en la colonia de aves en 2013 aumentó en un 33 por ciento en comparación con el nivel de 2009. La respuesta positiva de la avifauna a los cambios en U Minh Thuong con respecto a la hidrología de los humedales turbosos de Melaleuca inundados estacionalmente, indica la necesidad de comprender cómo intervienen los procesos "normales" de los humedales en apoyo de la conservación de la biodiversidad antes de modificarlos para el control de incendios.

#### RÉSUMÉ

Le parc national d'U Minh Thuong est l'une des deux plus grandes tourbières marécageuses restantes au Viet Nam, comprenant des prairies saisonnièrement inondées et des forêts de Melaleuca qui constituent une zone très importante pour la conservation des oiseaux en raison de la diversité de ses habitats humides. Un incendie de forêt dévastateur en 2002 a entraîné la mise en place de nouvelles mesures de prévention contre les incendies consistant en un régime obligatoire d'inondation permanente sur de vastes zones du parc, ce qui a entraîné une grave dégradation des zones humides et des forêts. Cela a eu un impact négatif sur les populations d'oiseaux et sur leur diversité. En 2009, le gouvernement du Viet Nam et les autorités du parc ont adopté une pratique améliorée de gestion de l'eau. Le résultat d'une enquête menée quatre ans plus tard a permis d'ajouter deux nouvelles espèces sur la liste des 159 espèces d'oiseaux du parc. Parmi celles-ci figurent 25 espèces menacées habitant et se nourrissant dans les zones humides du parc et la zone tampon adjacente. Selon le plus grand recensement pratiqué sur trois jours consécutifs, la population d'oiseaux d'eau a augmenté de 33% en 2013 par rapport au niveau de 2009. Cette réaction positive de l'avifaune à U Minh Thuong grâce à la pratique améliorée du régime d'hydrologie des forêts de Melaleuca saisonnièrement inondées, souligne la nécessité d'une prise en compte du fonctionnement «normal» des zones humides et de son rôle dans la conservation de la biodiversité, avant toute modification pour la gestion des incendies.



## A CROSS-NATIONAL COMPARATIVE STUDY ON COLLABORATIVE MANAGEMENT OF NATIONAL PARKS

Ifeoluwa B. Adewumi<sup>1\*</sup>, Carolin Funck<sup>1</sup>, Van Hoang Nguyen<sup>1</sup> and Rie Usui<sup>2</sup>

\*Corresponding author: ifykay999@yahoo.com

<sup>1</sup>Graduate School of Integrated Arts and Sciences, Hiroshima University, Japan <sup>2</sup>Graduate School of Letters, Hiroshima University, Japan

#### ABSTRACT

National Parks (NPs) are established with the aim of protecting important natural environments. However, numerous conflicts have emerged due to the introduction of park rules restricting local communities from utilising resources within national parks. The aim of this paper is to examine ways in which national parks in various nations employ the collaboration of stakeholders in park management and conflict resolution by focusing on four countries: Germany, Japan, Nigeria and Vietnam. A review of literature available in multiple languages, analysis of administrative documents and informal interview were the methods adopted. We show that challenges hindering comanagement in the four countries range from unclear responsibilities of various actors, to weak institutionalised framework, and centralisation of park management. The result implicates that each country can learn different techniques of co-management from other countries, leading to more productive approaches towards national park management and conflict resolution in and around national parks.

Key words: co-management, national park, park volunteers, NGOs, developed country, developing country

#### **INTRODUCTION**

One of the objectives of National Parks (NPs) is to protect natural resources within the park while ensuring the needs of local people's livelihoods (Dudley, 2008). However, many NPs have failed in this regard, generating numerous conflicts with local people due to the restrictions imposed on their use of resources within NPs (von Ruschkowski, 2010). To resolve these conflicts, collaborative management (co-management) has been adopted by park administrations as one of the strategies to reconcile conservation objectives with the interests of local communities (De Pourcq et al., 2015). Co-management is a form of shared governance where authority and responsibility are shared among several stakeholders (Dudley, 2008). However, one of the stakeholders has the authority to make decisions but is required to inform or consult other stakeholders either at the time of planning or implementing initiatives (Borrini-Feyerabend et al., 2013).

Co-management of protected areas has been extensively investigated over the last two decades (Fox et al., 2013). Studies have shown that co-management contributes to the sustainable management of natural resources (Andersson & Agrawal, 2011; Gutiérrez et al., 2011); leads to improvements in local livelihoods (Morshed, 2013); and plays a vital role in conflict resolution (De Pourcq et al., 2015). On the other hand, there has been criticism that it has not lived up to expectations (Dressler et al., 2010), but instead has aggravated the conflict that it was intended to solve (Carlsson & Berkes, 2005).

Although the previous studies found mixed results regarding the effect of the co-management of NPs on managing resources, they are mainly focused on local stakeholders' participation in park management. While many countries have a three-layered administrative structure with national, regional and local levels, the role of regional administrations in NP management has not been extensively addressed. Likewise, the roles of sponsors, volunteers and NGOs in NP management have received little attention.

Thus, this paper will examine management structures across national-regional-local levels, and the involvement of local stakeholders, NGOs, volunteers and the private sector in NP management by drawing



cases from Germany, Japan, Nigeria and Vietnam. The rationale for making a comparison across the four countries is that conflicts between local communities and the administrations are said to exist worldwide (von Ruschkowski, 2010). The study aims to identify the strengths and issues that need to be addressed for effective management across different scales and actors of NPs in each country.

#### **METHODS**

The study reviewed NP management systems in Germany, Japan, Nigeria and Vietnam. All of them have three levels of administration (national, regional, local), so that the balance between these three scales can be analysed. Furthermore, the four authors have first-hand in-depth knowledge of these countries and their NP management and can analyse documents in the respective languages. The main methods used for data collection are review of the literature available in English, German, Japanese and Vietnamese, and administrative documents. The literature included journals, books, reports and conference papers on NP and collaborative management in the NPs of the four countries. These were obtained from the Web of Science and Google Scholar search engines. The authors searched: "National park management in the various countries", "management policies and structure", "collaborative management" and "co-management", with "AND" used as a connecting word between keywords for the purpose of retrieving relevant papers, books and reports for the review. Administrative documents on the management of NPs were obtained either directly in each country or through email requests or downloaded from administration homepages. Furthermore, we conducted research in NPs in each country, which provided on-the-ground background knowledge and helped to clarify issues that were identified from literature and administrative documents. The NPs researched are: Wadden Sea NP, Germany (Funck, 2017); Yakushima NP, Japan (Adewumi, 2017; Nguyen & Funck, 2019); Gashaka-Gumti NP, Nigeria (Adewumi, 2017); and Tram Chim NP, Vietnam<sup>1</sup>.

#### COMPARATIVE RESEARCH ON THE CO-MANAGEMENT OF NATIONAL PARKS Management structure across national-regional -local levels

#### Management structure of German NPs

The history of NPs in Germany is guite recent compared to other developed countries, with the oldest park established in 1970 (von Ruschkowski, 2010). As of 2019, 16 NPs exist in Germany, varying in size between 30.7 and 322 km2 and protecting a total area of approximately 10,479 km2 (BfN, 2019). All NPs are secured by state law or ordinance and with the exception of one park, comprise more than 90 per cent of public land owned by the federal, state or local government. Although the first NP was established in 1970, Germany did not have a national nature protection law until 1976. This very basic framework has since been reformed several times, with current law Federal Nature Conservation being the Act (Bundesnaturschutzgesetz, 2010<sup>2</sup>).

German NPs are established under the Federal Nature Conservation Act, but are designated and administered at the regional level by the federal states in which each park lies. This has led to an unsystematic designation of NPs, as each state has chosen areas based on its particular regional and local structure rather than on a national concept that could create an integrated network of large-scale protected areas (Job, 2010). The zoning concept is handled differently in each state too. Between 2009 and 2012, EUROPARC, an umbrella organisation of protected areas in Germany, conducted an evaluation of NPs (EUROPARC, 2013) in close cooperation with the federal government. The evaluation revealed that park structures depend on the state laws and ordinances under which the parks are created and therefore differ in each state and park. In only eight parks is the NP administration situated directly below the highest nature protection authority, in others it is integrated into different lower agencies (EUROPARC, 2013).

The full financing of the NP is provided by the federal state in each case. However, it was found that only half of the parks had sufficient funds for park management and maintenance (EUROPARC, 2013). The NPs charge

no entrance fees but offer some limited services and facilities.

#### Management structure of Japanese NPs

The first NPs in Japan were established in 1931, and in the same year, Japan's NPs Law was enacted, which was amended in 1957, becoming the Natural Parks Law. As of 2019, there are a total of 34 NPs in Japan covering 21,907 km2 (5.8 per cent) of the total territorial area of Japan (MOE, 2019).

Due to the long history of private land ownership, NPs in Japan comprise state-owned land, local governmentowned land and private land (Knight, 2010). The MOE plays a coordinating role in the management of the parks jointly with the state, prefecture and other parties (MOE, 2015). The Forestry Agency or prefectural government manages land in government-owned forests, while the Forestry Agency is essential in the management of private-owned forests within NPs (Yamaki, 2008).

Parks are administered using a system known as "national park management by zoning and regulation" or "multiple-use system" (Hiwasaki, 2005). The zoning system divides the parkland into three different levels of protection, Special Protection, Special and Ordinary Zones (Jones, 2013). While the designation and zoning of NPs is decided at the national level, since 2008, local authorities have the power to designate certain natural resources under the Act on the Promotion of Ecotourism and introduce access restrictions (Funck & Cooper, 2013) both inside and outside NPs. MOE provides NP management funds, but they are inadequate for park operation. Hence, the MOE declared a law in 2015 allowing local communities to collect entrance fees to resolve these problems. Furthermore, some NPs collect donations or voluntary contributions from tourists, which are used for the maintenance of trails, visitor centres and other facilities (Kubo et al., 2018).

#### Management structure of NPs in Nigeria

Although the initiative to establish NPs in Nigeria started in 1976, it was not until 1979 that the first national park was established. Decree 46 of 1999 which was revised in 2005 as the Nigeria National Park Service (NNPS) Act, is the legal instrument under which NPs are administered. Nigeria has seven NPs, covering a total area of 22,206 km2, about 3 per cent of Nigeria's total land area.

NPs are the preserve of the Federal Government under its exclusive legislative list, and parklands are the property of the government (Amosun & Adedoyin, 2010). NPs in Nigeria are managed and administered by the Federal Ministry of Environment through the NNPS. Each NP has a Management Committee overseeing the affairs of the park. Since NPs are the sole responsibility of the federal government, they provide funds, tourism businesses and all facilities within the park, and tourists are charged entrance fees.

NPs in Nigeria are divided into zones for the purpose of applying different management principles in each zone that may best ensure the overall management objective for the park. Zoning in the parks consists of management zones (core/wilderness area, buffer zone, multi-use area/enclaves and the support zones) and protection zones or ranges. The aim of the management zone is to facilitate more focused management and proper allocation of park resources and staff to the areas needed while protection zones are operational areas for the protection and monitoring of the park's resources.

#### Management structure of Vietnamese NPs

The first NP was established in 1962 before the reunification. Vietnam has five main categories of national protected areas that often overlap: special-use forest protected areas, wetlands, marine protected areas, world heritage sites and biosphere reserves. Among these five categories, NPs are considered part of Special-Use Forests (SUFs) protected areas. The SUFs are established under the provisions of the Forest Protection and Development Law of 2004. As of 2016, Vietnam has a total of 31 NPs – equivalent to IUCN Category II – protecting a total area of approximately 10,350 km2, covering about 2.9 per cent of the land area<sup>3</sup> (The Government of Vietnam, 2010, 2014).

The management tasks for protected areas in Vietnam are divided among several agencies. The Ministry of Agriculture and Rural Development (MARD) and its provincial departments are responsible for managing all SUFs, and scientific research and experiment forests<sup>4</sup>. The management policies of NPs follow the regulations for SUFs' management. Currently, Vietnam has two types of NP: first, the cross-provincial parks or nationally important parks under the management of the Forest Protection Department within MARD; second, the within-provincial parks under the administration of the Provincial People's Committee (PPC). Among the 31 NPs in Vietnam, eight are managed by MARD while 23 NPs belong to the provincial level (The Government of Vietnam, 2010).

Although the MARD and/or PPC take full responsibility for the management of NPs, the daily operations and management are the responsibility of the National Park Management Board (NPMB). Basically, each NP has a NPMB, a state-owned organisation, which has the functions and tasks of a forest owner and the stateassured conditions for managing, protecting and developing SUFs. NPMBs are funded by the state, but at a very low level. Hence, entrance fees are charged and many Vietnamese NPs are supported with funds from many NGOs.

NPs in Vietnam are divided into zones for management purposes. According to Decision 186 (The Government of Vietnam, 2006), the zones include the strictly protected zone, ecological restoration zone and serviceadministrative zone. These functional zonings can be adjusted to the boundaries of each sub-zone based on the characteristics and actual situation of each NP and the purposes of forest management and use.

# Co-management: involvement of local stakeholders, NGOs, volunteers, private sector and sponsors

#### Co-management in German NPs

Stoll-Kleemann (2001) reveals that one of the main conflicts faced by German NPs is that local opposition can be aimed at the park designation and at management plans and practices. This opposition is not so much based on conflicts over resource use or on insufficient knowledge of environmental protection but rather, on emotional drivers (e.g. the impression of facing restrictions on day-to-day decisions) and cultural drivers (e.g. the challenge to traditional values and habits). Adding some evidence for a weak interest in local support on the park management side, von Ruschkowski (2010) reports that only three out of the 14 NPs in Germany had placed high priority on the issue of

#### Box 1: Stakeholder involvement in co-management in German NPs

A successful example of co-management between several levels of administration and NGOs is EUROPARC Deutschland, established in 1991 to address the shortcomings of the federal structure. Volunteers, nature protection NGOs and local communities play important roles in supporting park administration in Germany. However, voluntary engagements in NPs rely heavily on nature protection NGOs for organisation and recruiting. The involvement of the private sector in NPs is still in the development phase, with only a handful of private companies supporting EUROPARC and partnering with NPs in the tourism sector.
Table 1.	. Management	structure	of NPs in	the four	countries
10010 21			0		

Category of comparison	Germany	Japan	Nigeria	Vietnam	
First NPs	1970	1931	1979	1962	
Number of NPs	16 NPs, covering a total area of 10,479 km <sup>2</sup>	34 NPs covering 21,907 km <sup>2</sup>	7 NPs with a total area of 22,206 km <sup>2</sup>	31 NPs covering 10,350 km <sup>2</sup>	
Land ownership	More than 90 per cent are public land owned by the federal, state or local government	State-owned, local government-owned and private land	Federal Government of Nigeria	The Government of Vietnam	
Designation	Established under the Federal Nature Conservation Act, but designated by the federal states	Natural Parks Law	Nigeria National Park Service Acts	Forest Protection and Development Law of 2004, but designated by the GOV	
Administration and management	Administered at the regional level by the state in which each park lies	Managed jointly by the state, prefecture and other parties, with MOE playing a coordinating role	Managed by the Federal Ministry of Environment through the Nigeria National Park Service	MARD or PPC through NPMB	
Zoning Parkland is divided into different zones, but zoning is handled differently in each state and, as a result, the number of zones differs.		Zoning is decided on the national level Zoning system divides the parkland into Special Protection, Special and Ordinary Zones	Zoning consists of management zones and protection zones Management zone: core area, buffer zone, multi-use area/ enclaves and support zones	Zoning consists of strictly protected zone, ecological restoration zone and service-administrative zone	
Park funding	Full finance is provided by the Federal State No entrance or gate fees are charged	Provided by the MOE Entrance fees, donations and voluntary contributions	Solely provided by Federal Government Entrance fees	Funded by the national government Support from many NGOs Entrance fees	

monitoring support among local communities. Ludwig et al. (2012) point out that even when efforts were made to include local communities in decision-making processes on management of deer in the Bavarian Forest National Park, they were not successful due to the underlying territorial discourse. Residents felt that the park in general restricted their home territory and therefore would not accept an offer to cooperate on detailed management questions.

On the other hand, Sieberath (2007) examined acceptance of the relatively new Eifel National Park, which was established in 2004. He concluded that the park in general is well accepted. However, local residents do not feel they have sufficient possibilities to participate in decision-making. He emphasises that NP support organisations that exist in all parks have contributed greatly to a better acceptance of NPs in Germany (Sieberath, 2007). EUROPARC (2013) avers that cooperation with local administration agencies, tourism agencies, educational institutions, support organisations and nature protection NGOs is considered extensive and successful, which has led to an increased acceptance of the parks and their general aims in recent years.

From the above research examples, it can be argued that the issue of acceptance has been neglected in the development of NPs, especially concerning emotional resistance to restrictions. While some regulations obviously affect economic activities like forestry, others like collection of wild berries and mushrooms restrict traditional ways to enjoy nature. Cooperation with local and regional partners could be an effective strategy for increasing acceptance.

To address the shortcomings of the federal structure, EUROPARC Deutschland aimed to connect professionals from all three categories of large-scale protected areas and nature NGOs. Since 2005, it has branded them together as Nationale Naturlandschaften (national natural landscapes) in cooperation with the Federal Ministry for the Environment, Nature Conservation, Building and Nuclear Safety, many of the federal states and more than 20 NGOs5. Germany has a highly developed system of charitable organisations. The two biggest national nature protection and environmental NGOs have about 500,000 members each; many others are active on a local and regional level. Branding, evaluation, publicity and research activities by EUROPARC are a successful example of comanagement between several levels of administration and NGOs.

Parks try to make up the shortfalls in funds and personnel through long-term volunteers, cooperation with nature protection NGOs and local communities (EUROPARC, 2013). The long-term volunteers offer an important source of young, engaged staff for visitor centres and other educational activities (Funck, 2017). Although the volunteer activity in nature protection in Germany dates back to the 19th century's bird monitoring, it has been given an official role in federal and state law as Ehrenamt, an expression that designates honorary officials. Another important form of volunteers are participants in the 6 to 18 month-long Volunteer Ecological Year (Freiwilliges Ökologisches Jahr, FÖJ), created in 1993 under federal law but, once again, is run under the responsibility of the states (Haack, 2006). All three forms of voluntary engagement rely heavily on nature protection NGOs for organisation and recruiting. The important role of NGOs might be

one of the reasons why private sector involvement in NPs is still in the development phase.

Concerning cooperation with the private sector, the idea of private sponsorship for NPs is relatively weak in Germany. Six private companies support EUROPARC as a national organisation with materials and funds<sup>6</sup>. As a form of mutual benefit, many individual parks have established so-called 'partner-initiatives' with local or regional tourism businesses since 2000. These contracts between park administration and tourism businesses aim to increase environmental awareness among tourists, increase regional acceptance of the parks and promote regional development; businesses benefit from using the NP brand. In 2012, 12 parks established initiatives with 564 partners, mainly in accommodation and gastronomy (Hoffmann, 2014).

#### Co-management in Japanese NPs

As management of NPs is divided between several types and levels of administrative agents, collaboration and coordination is required between them. However, no institutionalised framework exists for this purpose, except those that are also designated as a World Heritage site. In this case, coordinating structures are established and may include some private sector organisations (Tsuchiya, 2014).

Realising that the mixed-use system of NP management in Japan requires collaboration between stakeholders (Jones, 2013), the Natural Parks Law was amended in 2002 to allow the delegation of park management to local non-profit organisations (NPOs) (Kato, 2003; MOE, 2002). This made it possible for communitybased organisations to become more involved in park management (Hiwasaki, 2005), and improved public participation. Local community actors are usually involved in conservation activities, such as park volunteers, local nature guides, interpreters and members of local conservation NGOs. However, negative effects are evident in the case of Yakushima. Enforcement of conservation laws has been difficult due to the existence of conflicting interests among various stakeholders (Adewumi, 2017).

#### Box 2 Stakeholder involvement in co-management in Japanese NPs

Due to overlapping land ownership, various actors are involved in NP management at local and regional level. However, there exists no institutionalised framework for co-management among these groups. To encourage the involvement of local NPOs in park management, the Natural Parks Law was amended in 2002. This has facilitated the involvement of local actors in park management through activities such as park volunteers, local nature guides, interpreters and members of local conservation NGOs. They are usually responsible for clean-up activities in park sites, providing visitor guidance and supervision, repair and maintenance of facilities, among others. The involvement of the private sector is becoming increasingly prominent. For example, in the case of Nikko NP, a public-service corporation was established with the aim of park cleaning, providing visitor guidance and supervision, facilities repair and maintenance, and research (Sheppard, 2001). The public-service corporation was established through partnership between prefectures, cities and neighbouring towns, and an electricity company and other related business enterprises were established in support of the park.

Park volunteers play an important role in the management of NPs. The current volunteer system was established in 1985 (Kim & Yui, 2001). The park volunteers fill educational and basic park maintenance roles. About 1,520 volunteers were registered in 38 NPs in 2016 (National Park Research Group & Nature Parks Foundation, 2017). However, the park volunteer system has faced issues of ageing volunteers, lack of funding and heavy responsibilities (Miyamoto & Funck, 2016).

The Natural Parks Foundation, established in 1978 as the Natural Parks Beautification and Management Foundation, plays a significant role in park management. The functions of the foundation are to help: (1) conserve and manage the natural environment of NPs and quasi-NPs; (2) maintain and manage park facilities; (3) provide information to visitors; and (4) support volunteers' activities and the volunteer system (Kim & Yui, 2001; MOE, 2015).

#### Co-management of NPs in Nigeria

Due to the creation of NPs and especially the enforcement of Decree No. 36 (1991) that prohibits hunting, exploitation of forest resources and trespass into park areas, local people have been deprived of their source of livelihood. This led to illegal exploitation of resources in the park, threatening the existence of the NPs (Adewumi, 2017). An approach was proposed to address the problems associated with excluding human activities from the park. Although the NNPS decree of 1999 states that communities are to be represented on National Park Management Committees and



Local users in Tram Chim National Park  $\ensuremath{\mathbb{C}}$  Van Hoang Nguyen

partnerships, it does not specifically give communities rights to forest resources within NPs.

In Nigeria, local people are not fully involved in making decisions because their representatives or the government usually make decisions on their behalf (Eneji et al., 2009). Neither do they benefit directly from tourism within the park. This is evident in Gashaka-Gumti NP where tourism businesses such as chalets, restaurants and souvenir shops are provided by the park, making it difficult for the locals to benefit from tourism and interact with tourists (Adewumi, 2017). In principle, local artefacts should be produced and supplied to the NP by local people so as to serve as a source of revenue for the locals, but this is not the case in Nigeria.

Nevertheless, efforts are being made by each NP to improve the standard of living of communities living within and around the NPs through the community support zone development programme. The community support zone development programme embarked upon by each NP has been one of the approaches employed to achieve the protection and conservation of park resources and attain sustainable development in rural areas (Wahab & Adewumi, 2013). Most NPs in the country provide funds and materials to assist in the completion of community-sponsored projects, provide healthcare services, educational facilities in primary schools, boreholes and reinstate major access roads

#### Box 3: Stakeholder involvement in co-management in Nigerian NPs

Co-management is a relatively new concept in Nigerian NPs due to the top-down management system adopted in the country. Local communities are not included in decision-making or tourism-related businesses within the parks. To improve the parks' relationships with the host communities, and to support the well-being of the local people, community support zone development programmes were established. NGOs play a significant role in Nigerian NPs by collaborating with the NNPS to support conservation and empowering the local communities. The private sector is rarely involved in park management in Nigeria. Hence, nature conservationists and tourist investors are facilitating private partnership with NPs in the country.

within host communities (Ewah, 2010; Odebiyi et al., 2015). Furthermore, Gashaka-Gumti NP provides a vocational training centre so as to reduce dependence on the illegal exploitation of park resources (Adewumi, 2017), while Kainji Lake NP provides funds for microprojects to reduce the poverty level of local communities (Wahab & Adewumi, 2013).

NGOs have played a significant role in the establishment and management of NPs in Nigeria. Nigerian Conservation Foundation (NCF), which is Nigeria's oldest conservation NGO, established in 1982, was instrumental in the creation of the NNPS and NPs in the country. A 10-year Memorandum of Understanding between Wildlife Conservation Society (WCS) and NNPS was signed in 2011 to help protect endangered wild animals such as elephants (Loxodonta africana), chimpanzee (Pan troglodytes), gorilla (Gorilla gorilla diehli), Preuss's guenon (Cercopithecus preussi) and Preuss's red colobus monkey (Procolobus preussi). Smaller NGOs such as Pandrillus, the Nigerian Forest Elephant Wildlife Survey and Promotion group (NFEWSPG), the Yankari Initiative, Fauna and Flora International, among others, have helped in the survival of many conservation initiatives in the country. Also, Gashaka Primate Project (GPP), funded by the North of England Geological Society, London, through Chester Zoo, has, since 2000, been supporting the conservation of primates in Gashaka-Gumti NP and been involved in improving public health and empowering the local economy7.

Although the law governing the NNPS is open to private sector participation, only a few have taken the initiative. This is because only a few private sector companies have the resources to commit sufficient funding to conservation in Nigeria. In 2014, some nature conservationists and tourist investors organised a workshop with the aim to promote private partnership involvement in the Nigerian NPs. Action plans were drawn up to help in (1) reviewing the law establishing the NNPS to ensure the possibilities of a working relationship between the NNPS and potential investors in some parks; (2) collection of data and information on the state of the parks and the production of report findings; and (3) broad stakeholder engagement and development of a mechanism for fund raising among others (NCF, 2014).

## Co-management from the perspective of Vietnamese NPs

According to the Law on Forest Protection and Development (The GOV, 2004), the management of Protection and Production Forests could belong to different sectors including state or private sectors, organisations or households. However, the NPMB organises ecotourism development in NPs in collaboration with other institutions and companies from the state or private sectors.

The management model regarding ecotourism and/or recreation activities in protected areas has been developed since 2006. Based on the principle of SUFs policy, the NPMB has the right to manage ecotourism activities within a park under the following three models: (1) the state-management model, in which ecotourism activities are managed by the NPMB; (2) the private-management model, which involves leasing forestland to private groups or companies to organise ecotourism businesses; and (3) the joint-venture model, which includes existing associations and other forms of investment in ecotourism activities (Ly & Xiao, 2016). In the Vietnamese NPs' management system, the statemanagement model is still dominant although several NPs have started to apply the co-existing management model to meet development and conservation needs.

The involvement of volunteers and the private sector in Vietnamese NPs' management is still new. Recently, Con Dao NP<sup>8</sup> and Nui Chua NP<sup>9</sup> collaborated with International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN) to call for volunteers' engagement in sea turtle conservation. Short trips were organised for participants to experience sea turtle conservation in these two NPs.

#### Box 4: Stakeholder involvement in co-management in Vietnamese NPs

In Vietnamese NPs, stakeholders are mainly involved in park management through ecotourism development activities. Due to the development of the ecotourism management model in 2006, the NPMB often collaborates with other institutions and companies of the state or private sectors for ecotourism development. The involvement of volunteers in Vietnamese NPs management is still new. They are mainly involved in sea turtle conservation in collaboration with NPMB and IUCN. While there has been a long history of NGOs' involvement in Vietnamese NPs, their involvement is mainly related to grants for research and conservation purposes. Local communities are usually involved in running ecotourism ventures developed in the parks and benefit from Sustainable Resource User Groups, allowing the communities to sustainably utilise resources within the park. These involvements are aimed at supporting poor households within the parks.

These activities started in summer 2016 and are ongoing projects that involve volunteers in Vietnamese NPs. A rare case of private sector involvement in Vietnamese NPs' management is that of Phong Nha–Ke Bang NP, where two private companies, Oxalis Company and The Truong Thinh Group, operate tourism activities in the park (Ly & Xiao, 2016).

Many NGOs and other institutions such as IUCN, the World Bank, World Wildlife Fund (WWF), Swedish International Development Cooperation Agency and Danish International Development Agency have been engaged in Vietnamese NPs for the last decades. However, their involvement is mainly related to grants for research and conservation purposes. Tram Chim NP is a good example of the collaboration between the NPMB, local community, private investors and NGOs in ecotourism and sustainable management in the park.

Tram Chim NP established the Centre for Ecotourism and Environmental Education for managing ecotourism activities in 2003. This offered opportunities for people who can invest financially in tourism services in the park under a scheme called the Tourist Boat Investment System (TBIS). The Tram Chim NPMB introduced the TBIS programme in 2014, to facilitate collaboration between local residents, tourism investors and the NPMB1. Investment in the TBIS is open to both local people and the park officers, as "boat investors". Local poor households are employed as both boat drivers and tour guides.

In addition, Tram Chim NP has established six "Sustainable Resource User Groups". With the support of the Coca-Cola Company and WWF, wetland resources are co-managed with local communities. This allows local communities to sustainably utilise resources within the park's boundaries (WWF, 2011). To benefit from these programmes, the following conditions must be met: (1) households living near the park; (2) poor or near poor households; (3) households who contributed to the revolution during the wartime.

Generally, tourism development and sustainable natural resources' exploitation in the case of Tram Chim NP and its policy aim to support the poor and communities surrounding the park. However, the number of

Case study	Challenges hindering co-management
Germany	Weak restrictions on use of natural resources in the parks due to weak national influence and strong regional interests The opinions of residents are usually incorporated into planning system at a very late stage
Japan	Multiple and overlapping conservation agencies within the parks Weak restrictions for the protection and conservation of NPs Inharmonious relationship between stakeholders because most of them have different objectives Difficulty in locating responsibilities due to the division of management between different authorities on the national, regional and local levels
Nigeria	Top-down management approach has hampered local level involvement Isolation of NPs from local communities makes them reluctant to accept conservation and hostile to NPs Reluctance to incorporate local people in park projects and management because it is deemed as time-consuming The long process of information transfer from the top to local people might hinder immediate actions from being taken
Vietnam	Responsibilities of organisations engaged in NPs' management seem not to be clearly designated Overlap in management policies of NPs with other protected areas Conflicts between local users and NPs' management hinders co-management

#### Table 2. Principal challenges hindering co-management in the four countries

participants in these activities is still relatively small, with only a handful of low-skilled jobs available.

# CHALLENGES OF CO-MANAGEMENT IN THE FOUR COUNTRIES

In German NPs, two main barriers to co-management are a weak national constituency and conflicts with local people (Table 2). Although state management allows for the adjustment of management structures to regional conditions, it has hampered restrictions on competing land (and water) uses and led to a lack of funding (Schumacher & Job, 2013), while also carrying the risk of regional actors promoting NPs for mainly economic benefits (Job, 2010). However, the nationwide evaluation conducted by EUROPARC (2013) was a first step in setting common criteria for NP management.

Concerning acceptance of NPs, Schumacher and Job (2013) noted that a high degree of local acceptance is visible in the oldest parks (where economic benefits have become visible over the years), parks in former East Germany (because they contributed to the image improvement of little known areas), and the newest parks that were created with better consensus building. However, von Ruschkowski (2010) emphasises the need for better personal communication with local stakeholders and less reliance on formal requirements for participatory processes. Better regional governance an unfinished task, maybe because remains administrations have been relying on Germany's highly developed regional planning system that does not incorporate residents' opinions until at a very late stage.

The underlying challenge in co-management in Japanese NPs is its multi-use system (Table 2). This system is characterised by conflicts of interest between (Hiwasaki, 2007). stakeholders Likewise, the relationships between MOE and other stakeholders are not harmonious because most of these stakeholders have different objectives. According to Hiwasaki (2007, p. 111), these divergent objectives are obvious in situations where "one agency is intent on conserving the resources in a given area, another may well be busy undermining them under the pretext of regional development". In Yakushima NP where there are overlapping conservation bodies and various government stakeholders, it is obvious that stakeholders are not only poorly organised but also oppose each other at times. This has sometimes led to obstruction and criticism of each other and rebuffing each other's rights (Kato, 2000). The multi-layer management structure of Japanese NPs makes it difficult to allocate responsibilities. Therefore, local stakeholders struggle to find the right person to respond to their calls (Miyamoto & Funck, 2016). Furthermore,

the limited land ownership of MOE makes it difficult to impose adequate regulations on NPs. Hence, NPs in Japan have weak restrictions and depend on selfregulation for protection and conservation (Hiwasaki, 2007). Volunteers have to cover the resulting gaps in management without, however, being involved in planning and management decisions (Miyamoto & Funck, 2016).

In the case of Nigeria, co-management has been hindered by the isolation of the NPs from local society (Table 2). The top-down approach adopted by Nigerian parks has hampered local level involvement in planning and development but followed the nation's centralised form of government. As NPs in Nigeria are found within underdeveloped communities that depend on local natural resources for their livelihood, their encroachment into NPs in order to provide for themselves is exacerbated by their exclusion from park management (Ewah, 2010). Similarly, the direct funding of parks by the Federal Government has limited the interest of park managers in communicating with the states, local governments and the communities. This has resulted in the loss of local support for NPs (Hassan et al., 2015).

Another fundamental problem plaguing co-management in Nigeria is the fact that local people often perceive conservation as a hindrance to development. They are reluctant to accept conservation and are hostile to NPs because they see them as a means of depriving them of their livelihood (Adewumi, 2017). Unless the park management actively involves local communities by giving them a certain degree of control, it will be hard for them to view conservation as representing their socioeconomic and cultural interests (Eneji et al., 2009).

In the case of the Vietnamese NPs, management involves several state organisations (Table 2). Therefore, the responsibilities of those engaged in NPs' management seem not to be clearly designated, except the role of the NPMB. Especially since some other types of protected areas such as Ramsar Sites, Marine Protected Areas and Biosphere Reserves often overlap with NPs, so that management policies may overlap or become confused. Since NPs in Vietnam belong to SUFs, private sectors and communities are faced with the barriers of participating in management unless they are offered opportunities in ecotourism projects.

Perhaps, one of the most serious challenges of Vietnamese NPs' management is the conflict between local users and NPs' management staff. Similar to the situation in Nigeria, the control of human activities in NPs is difficult because many people are dependent on

#### Table 3. Comparing challenges of co-management in the four countries

Co-management challenges	Countries affected by the challenges		
Unclear responsibilities due to overlapping conservation agencies within the parks	In both Japan and Vietnam, the responsibilities of conservation bodies engaged in NPs' management are not clear, because other protected areas overlap with the national park. Hence, management policies within the parks also overlap and are sometimes confusing.		
Weak institutionalised framework /or national constitution	In Japanese NPs, there is no institutionalised framework for collaboration between the several administrative agents involved, thereby leading to poor organisation among the agents and conflicts of interest. Since the federal states are responsible for park designation in Germany, there is no national system on how to involve other stakeholders in park management.		
Weak restrictions for park protection	NPs in both Germany and Japan are faced with the challenges of weak restrictions for park protection and conservation of resources within the parks.		
Degree of dependence on local natural resources	Level of community dependence on natural resources within NPs in Nigeria and Vietnam is relatively high, resulting in conflicts between parks and communities and hindering acceptance of conservation and co- management.		
Centralised form of park management	The centralisation of park management in both Nigeria and Vietnam has made it difficult for the private sector and communities to directly participate in park management.		

natural resources in these areas. Therefore, there have been many cases of illegal logging in NPs in Vietnam. It is necessary to practise and apply suitable alternatives, for which community-based management has been suggested. Recently, co-management in Vietnamese protected areas has been widely discussed. This new method should be broadly applied to NPs throughout the country.

The aim of this paper was to identify forms of comanagement in Germany, Japan, Nigeria and Vietnam and discuss the challenges each country faces in achieving co-management of the park by reviewing the existing literature on NP management (Table 3). Characteristics of co-management in the four countries were summarised, with an emphasis on management by national-regional-local government, and how local stakeholders, NGOs, volunteers and private sectors are involved in park management. Co-management in the four countries is affected by factors such as the stakeholders responsible for park management, national policy governing the parks and land ownership.

The most significant difference regarding comanagement is that various stakeholders, such as volunteers, NGOs and local communities, play important roles in park management in both Germany and Japan, while NGOs are the main stakeholders involved in Nigeria and Vietnam. In Japan and Germany, park volunteer systems are well established and cover the shortfalls in funding and personnel by supporting park administration. The idea of involving volunteers and the private sector is just starting in Vietnam, with volunteers' involvement limited to sea turtle monitoring and the private sector to ecotourism activities only. Although NPs are established and managed by the national and/or federal state governments, we are of the opinion that incorporating other stakeholders, such as local communities, local governments, NGOs and the tourism industry, can give them a sense of ownership and responsibility. This sense of ownership will make it easier for local people to comply with the policies and guidelines governing the NPs, especially in Nigeria and Vietnam. Just as in the case of Germany where EUROPARC plays a significant role in co-management between several actors, it is recommended that similar conservation agencies be established to encourage collaboration and partnership between community and other stakeholders.

It is important to state that this review was intended to elucidate the successes and challenges in comanagement adopted in each case study. The present study may assist other countries in adopting some of the productive approaches discussed to improve their management system and foster effective conflict resolution in and around NPs.

#### **ENDNOTES**

<sup>1</sup>Data were collected based on interviews in December 2015.

<sup>2</sup>Bundesnaturschutzgesetz 2010. http://www.gesetze-iminternet.de/bnatschg 2009/BJNR

254210009.html#BJNR254210009BJNG000100000

(Accessed 28.6.2016)

<sup>3</sup>http://vietnamnationalpark.org/. (Accessed 29.7.2016)

<sup>4</sup>It is also translated into English as "Landscape conservation areas"

<sup>5</sup>EUROPARC Deutschland: Geschichte. http:// www.europarc-deutschland.de/ueber-uns/ geschichte (Accessed 27.6.2016)

<sup>6</sup>EUROPARC Deutschland: Förderer und Sponsoren. http://www.europarc-deutschland.de/ueber-uns/

forderer-sponsoren (Accessed 7.7.2016)

<sup>7</sup>http://www.ucl.ac.uk/gashaka/building/

<sup>8</sup>http://cmsdata.iucn.org/

downloads/20\_4\_\_thong\_bao\_tuyen\_tnv\_bao\_ton\_rua\_ bien\_2016\_con\_dao.pdf (in Vietnamese, accessed 18.10.2016)

<sup>9</sup>http://cmsdata.iucn.org/

downloads/10\_5\_\_chng\_trinh\_tinh\_nguyn\_vien\_vqg\_nui
\_chua.pdf (in Vietnamese, accessed 18.10.2016)

#### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The research in Wadden Sea NP, Germany was supported by JSPS KAKENHI Grant Number 25284166 (Leader: T. Asano) and JSPS KAKENHI Grant Number 26360065 (C. Funck).

#### **ABOUT THE AUTHORS**

**Ifeoluwa B. Adewumi** obtained her PhD from Hiroshima University, Japan in 2017. She earned an MSc in Wildlife Management from the University of Ibadan, Nigeria (2010) and a B.Tech in Fisheries and Wildlife from Federal University of Technology Akure, Nigeria (2001). Her research interests include community-based tourism, sustainable tourism and national park management.

**Carolin Funck** obtained her PhD from the Albert-Ludwigs University, Freiburg (Germany). She is professor of human geography at Hiroshima University (Japan), Graduate School of Integrated Arts and Sciences. Her research focuses on the development of tourism in Japan, sustainable island tourism and the rejuvenation of mature tourist destinations; machizukuri and citizen participation are also themes of interest. She is the author of "Tourismus und Peripherie in Japan" and co-author of "Japanese Tourism".

**Hoang V. Nguyen** is a lecturer in the Faculty of Geography, University of Social Sciences and Humanities, Vietnam National University, Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam. He is currently a PhD candidate at Hiroshima University, Japan. He obtained an MA in Natural Resources Preservation, Rational Exploitation, and Restoration in 2007 and received a BA in Tourism Geography in 2001 from Vietnam National University.

**Rie Usui** recently earned her PhD from Graduate School of Arts and Sciences, Hiroshima University. Currently, she is an assistant professor at Graduate School of Letters, Hiroshima University. Her research interests include human–animal relationship, wildlife tourism, ethical tourism, and community revitalization. She obtained an MSc in Primate Behavior and Ecology from Central Washington University in 2013 and received a BSc in Evolution and Ecology, and Anthropology from the Ohio State University in 2010.

#### REFERENCES

- Adewumi, I.B. (2017). Community-based tourism in national parks in developed and developing countries: Comparative study of Yakushima National Park, Japan and Gashaka-Gumti National Park, Nigeria. PhD Thesis, Hiroshima University, Japan.
- Amosun, O.O. and Adedoyin, O.S. (2010). Global forest resources assessment 2010: Country report, Nigeria. Rome: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Forestry Department, FRA2010/151.
- Andersson, K. and Agrawal, A. (2011). Inequalities, institutions, and forest commons. *Global Environmental Change*, 21, 866– 875.□
- BfN (Bundesamt für Naturschutz) (2019). Nationalparke. Retrieved on 6 February 2019 at http://www.bfn.de/en/activities/ protected-areas/national-parks.html
- Borrini-Feyerabend, G., Dudley, N., Jaeger, T., Lassen, B., Pathak Broome, N., Phillips, A. and Sandwith, T. (2013). Governance of Protected Areas: From understanding to action. Best Practice Protected Area Guidelines Series No. 20, IUCN Gland, Switzerland.
- Carlsson, L. and Berkes, F. (2005). Co-management: Concepts and methodological implications. *Journal of Environmental Management*, 75, 65–76.
- De Pourcq, K., Thomas, E., Arts, B., Vranckx, A., Léon-Sicard, T. and Van Damme P. (2015). Conflict in protected areas: Who says co-management does not work? *PLoS ONE*, 10(12), e0144943. DOI:10.1371/journal.pone.0144943
- Dressler, W., Büscher, B., Schoon, M., Brockington, D., Hayes, T., Kull, C.A., McCarthy, J. and Shrestha, K. (2010). From hope to crisis and back again? A critical history of the global CBNRM narrative. *Environmental Conservation*, 37, 5–15.

- Dudley, N. (Ed.) (2008). Guidelines for Applying Protected Area Management Categories. Gland, Switzerland: IUCN.
- Eneji, V.C.O., Gubo, Q., Okpiliya, F.I., Aniah, E.J., Eni, D.D. and Afangide, D. (2009). Problems of public participation in biodiversity conservation: The Nigerian scenario. *Impact* Assessment and Project Appraisal, 27(4), 301–307. DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.3152/146155109X479431
- EUROPARC Deutschland (Ed.). (2013). *Managementqualität deutscher Nationalparks*. Berlin: EUROPARC Deutschland.
- Ewah, J.O. (2010). Expanding mandate and corporate social responsibility in the management of National Parks and protected areas in Nigeria. *Journal of Agriculture and Environment for International Development*, 104(1–2), 25–38.
- Fox, J., Mustafa, M.G., Bushley, B.R., Brennan, S.M. and Durand, L. (Eds.) (2013). Connecting communities and conservation: Co-management initiatives implemented by IPAC in wetlands and forests of Bangladesh. Dhaka, Bangladesh: Integrated Protected Area Co-Management in Bangladesh. Dhaka, Bangladesh: USAID; Honolulu, HI: available at the East-West Centre.
- Funck, C. (2017). Considerations on sustainable tourism in wetlands from cases in Germany. *Geographical Sciences* 72 -3, 18–31.
- Funck, C. and Cooper, M. (2013). *Japanese Tourism: Spaces, places and structures*. New York and Oxford: Berghahn.
- Gutiérrez, N.L., Hilborn, R. and Defeo, O. (2011). Leadership, social capital and incentives promote successful fisheries. *Nature*, 470, 386–389. DOI: 10.1038/nature09689
- Haack, S. (2006). Das Freiwillige Ökologische Jahr. In: Bundesamt für Naturschutz: Freiwilligenarbeit im Naturschutz, (pp. 91–98). Bonn-Bad Godesberg: Bundesamt für Naturschutz.
- Hassan, A., Foziah, J., Mohammad, R.M. and Nasiru, I.M. (2015). Protected area management in Nigeria: A review. *Sciences & Engineering*, 77(15), 31–40.
- Hiwasaki, L. (2005). Toward sustainable management of national parks in Japan: Securing local community and stakeholder participation. *Environmental Management*, 35(6), 753–764. DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s00267-004-0134-6
- Hiwasaki, L. (2007). Community dynamics in Japanese rural areas and implications for national park management. *International Journal of Biodiversity Science and Management*, 3(2), 102– 114. DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/17451590709618166
- Hoffmann, A. (2014). Urlaub bei unseren Partnern Kooperationen stärken naturverträglichen Tourismus in den Nationalen Naturlandschaften. In: V. Scherfose (Ed.) Nationalparkmanagement in Deutschland. Bonn-Bad Godesberg: Bundesamt für Naturschutz.
- Job, H. (2010). Welche Nationalparke braucht Deutschland? Raumforschung und Raumordnung, 68, 75–89.
- Jones, T.E. (2013). From Government to Governance: An overview of administration of Japan's mixed-use nature parks. Retrieved on 27 October 2013 at http://www.kisc.meiji.ac.jp/ ~follow/topics/AP/TomJones2.pdf
- Kato, N. (2000). *Japanese National Parks*. Tokyo: Heibonsha Limited. (in Japanese)
- Kato, M. (2003). New developments and challenges of the natural parks system: Taking the example of utilization regulation zones. *National Parks* 618, 8–10. (in Japanese)

- Kim, S.H. and Yui, M. (2001). The progress and characteristics of volunteers in National Parks. *The Japanese Institute of Landscape Architecture* 64(5), 665–670. (in Japanese)
- Knight, C. (2010). Natural environments, wildlife, and conservation in Japan. *The Asia-Pacific Journal, Japan Focus*, 8 (4), 1–19.
- Kubo, T., Shoji, Y., Tsuge T. and Kuriyama, K. (2018). Voluntary contributions to hiking trail maintenance: Evidence from a field experiment in a national park, Japan. *Ecological Economics*, 144, 124–128. DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/ j.ecolecon.2017.07.032
- Ludwig, M., Grüninger, F., Rothfuss, E. and Heurich, M. (2012). Discourse analysis as an instrument to reveal the pivotal role of the media in local acceptance or rejection of a wildlife management project. *Erdkunde*, 66(2), 143–156. DOI: http:// dx.doi.org/10.3112/erdkunde.2012.02.04
- Ly, P.T. and Xiao, H. (2016). The choice of a park management model: A case study of Phong Nha-Ke Bang National Park in Vietnam. *Tourism Management Perspectives*, 17, 1–15. DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.tmp.2015.10.004
- Miyamoto, Y. and Funck, C. (2016). Senior citizens' voluntary activities in Miyajima's tourism space. *Studies in Environmental Sciences*, 11, 1–18.
- MOE (2002). Regarding the amendments to parts of the Natural Parks Law. *Environment*, October 6-12. (in Japanese)
- MOE (2015). Natural Park Systems in Japan. Accessed on 7 January 2015 at https://www.env.go.jp/en/nature/nps/park/ doc/files/parksystem.pdf
- MOE (2019). *National parks of Japan*. Accessed on 3 February 2019 at <u>https://www.env.go.jp/park/parks/index.html</u> (in Japanese)
- Morshed, H.M. (2013). Benefits and weaknesses of collaborative management: A case study in the Rema-Kalenga Wildlife Sanctuary. In: J. Fox, M.G. Mustafa, B.R. Bushley, S.M. Brennan and L. Durand (Eds.) Connecting communities and conservation: Co-management initiatives implemented by IPAC in wetlands and forests of Bangladesh. Dhaka, Bangladesh: Integrated Protected Area Co-Management in Bangladesh. Dhaka, Bangladesh: USAID; Honolulu, HI: available at the East-West Centre.
- National Park Research Group & Nature Parks Foundation. (2017). Kokuritsu kōen ron [Study of national parks]. Kagoshima, Japan: Nanpō Shinsha. (in Japanese)
- NCF (2014). Private sector participation in Nigeria National Parks underway. *Business Day*, Tuesday 11 February 2014, p. 33.
- Nguyen, V.H. and Funck, C. (2019). Tourism's contribution to an equal income distribution: Perspectives from local enterprises. *Tourism Planning & Development*. DOI: https:// www.tandfonline.com/doi/ full/10.1080/21568316.2018.1563564
- Odebiyi, B.R., Ayeni S.M., Umunna, M.O., and Johnson, J.J. (2015). Communities' attitudes towards conservation in Gashaka-Gumti National Park Nigeria. *Journal of Research in Forestry, Wildlife and Environment*, 7(2), 67–80.
- Schumacher, H. and Job, H. (2013). Nationalparke in Deutschland – Analyse und Prognose. *Natur und Landschaft*, 88(7), 309– 314.
- Sheppard, D. (2001). Protected areas in East Asia: Twenty-first century strategies for protected areas in East Asia. The George Wright Forum, 18(2), 40–55.
- Sieberath, J. (2007). Die Akzeptanz des Nationalparks Eifel bei der lokalen Bevölkerung. Bonn: Bundesamt für Naturschutz.

- Stoll-Kleemann, S. (2001). Barriers to nature conservation in Germany: A model explaining opposition to protected areas. *Journal of Environmental Psychology*, 21:4, 369–385. DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.1006/jevp.2001.0228
- The Government of Vietnam (2004). *The Law on Forest Protection and Development, Law No. 29/2004/QH11*. Retrieved on 27 July 2016 at http://vanban.chinhphu.vn/portal/ page/portal/ chinhphu/hethongvanban? class\_id=1&mode=detail&document\_id=13658 (in Vietnamese)
- The Government of Vietnam (2006). Decision No.186/2006/QD-TTg of Regulation on forest management. Retrieved on 28 June 2018 at http://moj.gov.vn/vbpq/Lists/Vn%20bn% 20php%20lut/View\_Detail.aspx?ItemID=15532 (in Vietnamese)
- The Government of Vietnam (2010). *Decree no. 117/2010/ND-CP* on organization and management of the special-use forest system. Hanoi: The Government of Vietnam (in Vietnamese)
- The Government of Vietnam (2014). Decree No. 1976/QĐ-TTg of the Prime Minister to approve special-use forest system planning in Vietnam to 2020 toward 2030. Retrieved on 15

July 2016 http://www.chinhphu.vn/portal/page/portal/chinhphu/ hethongvanban?

class\_id=2&\_page=6&mode=detail&document\_id=177162

- Tsuchiya, T. (2014). What is national park for us? Roles and possibilities of national park system with zoning. *Journal of Forest Economics*, 60(2), 1–12. (in Japanese)
- von Ruschkowski, E. (2010). Causes and potential solutions for conflicts between protected area management and local people in Germany. In: S. Weber, (Ed.) *Rethinking protected areas in a changing world: proceedings of the 2009 GWS biennial conference on parks, protected areas, and cultural sites.* Hancock, Michigan: The George Wright Society.
- Wahab, M.K.A. and Adewumi, A.A. (2013). Assessment of community participation in protected area: A case study of Kainji Lake National Park, Nigeria. *International Journal of Economics, Finance and Management*, 2(1), 60–64.
- WWF (2011). A transformative partnership to conserve water: Annual Review 2011, p. 15.
- Yamaki, K. (2008). Collaborative management in national parks. *Forest Science*, 53, 23–26. (in Japanese).

#### RESUMEN

Los parques nacionales se establecen con el propósito de proteger importantes entornos naturales. Sin embargo, han surgido innumerables conflictos provocados por la introducción de regulaciones que restringen a las comunidades locales el uso de recursos dentro de los parques nacionales. El objetivo del presente documento es examinar las formas en que los parques nacionales en varias naciones recurren a la colaboración de las partes interesadas en la gestión de parques y la resolución de conflictos, centrándose en cuatro países: Alemania, Japón, Nigeria y Vietnam. Los métodos adoptados incluyeron una revisión de la literatura disponible en varios idiomas, el análisis de documentos administrativos y entrevistas informales. Mostramos que los desafíos que obstaculizan la gestión conjunta en los cuatro países abarcan desde responsabilidades poco claras de los distintos actores hasta marcos institucionalizados débiles y la centralización de la gestión de los parques. El resultado implica que cada país puede aprender diferentes técnicas de cogestión de otros países con miras a enfoques más productivos hacia la gestión de parques nacionales y la resolución de conflictos en y alrededor de los parques nacionales.

#### RÉSUMÉ

Les parcs nationaux ont été créés dans le but de protéger les milieux naturels de haute importance environnementale. Cependant, de nombreux conflits sont apparus du fait de l'instauration de dispositions empêchant les communautés locales d'avoir accès aux ressources des parcs. L'objectif de cet article est d'examiner la manière dont des parcs nationaux de divers pays travaillent en collaboration avec les parties prenantes dans la gestion des parcs et la résolution des conflits. Notre étude s'est axée sur quatre pays: l'Allemagne, le Japon, le Nigeria et le Vietnam. Les méthodes retenues comprennent un examen de la littérature disponible dans plusieurs langues, une analyse de documents administratifs, ainsi que des entretiens informels. Nous montrons que les problèmes qui entravent la cogestion dans ces quatre pays sont variés, allant d'un manque de clarté dans les responsabilités des différents acteurs, à la faiblesse du cadre institutionnel, en passant par la centralisation de la gestion des parcs. Le résultat démontre que chaque pays peut apprendre différentes techniques de cogestion provenant d'autres pays, conduisant ainsi à des approches plus productives en matière de gestion et favorisant la résolution des conflits à l'intérieur et autour des parcs nationaux.



### IDENTIFYING GOVERNANCE PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS FOR FOREST LANDSCAPE RESTORATION IN PROTECTED AREA LANDSCAPES

#### Stephanie Mansourian<sup>\*1</sup>, Gretchen Walters<sup>2</sup>, Emily Gonzales<sup>3</sup>

\*Corresponding author: stephanie@mansourian.org

<sup>1</sup>Mansourian.org and University of Geneva, 36 Mont d'eau du Milieu, 1276 Gingins, Switzerland

<sup>2</sup>IUCN, Avenue Mauverney, 1196 Gland, Switzerland and University of Lausanne, Lausanne, Switzerland

<sup>3</sup>Parks Canada, 300-300 West Georgia St. Vancouver, BC V6B 6B4, Canada

#### ABSTRACT

Governance challenges – including ownership, decision-making, accountability, and sharing of costs and benefits – can impede forest landscape restoration in protected area landscapes. Understanding and addressing these challenges can improve the outcomes of forest landscape restoration. We tested the utility of applying an existing framework that focuses on three actions to understand governance – mapping stakeholders, contextualising and rescaling. The framework was applied to large-scale restoration initiatives in New Caledonia's dry forest, Canada's Cape Breton Highlands National Park and a Community Resource Management Area in Ghana's Western Region to identify governance challenges and solutions in forest landscape restoration implementation in different contexts. Application of the framework revealed four types of governance challenges: overlapping jurisdictions, interinstitutional relationships, tenure and property rights conflict, and stakeholder power dynamics, and five types of governance solutions: supportive national-level policies, clarifying tenure, convening structures, benefit sharing and compensation, and cultural incentives. Overall, we found that the framework helped interviewees to conceptualise governance challenges and identify ways to address them.

**Key words:** Governance, restoration, forest landscape restoration (FLR), protected area landscapes, New Caledonia, Ghana, Canada

#### **INTRODUCTION**

Restoring forest landscapes has become an important global objective as exemplified by ambitious international commitments such as the Bonn Challenge and the Africa 100 Partnership, whereby governments commit to restoring millions of hectares of forest land (Aronson & Alexander, 2013). Forest landscape restoration (FLR)1 complements protection and sustainable management and can be applied within and around protected areas (Keenleyside et al., 2012). Yet in practice, restoring forests within landscapes faces numerous governance hurdles (Hobbs et al., 2011). For example, who has a right to the forest? Do the same people have rights to the forest and to the benefits from restoring that ecosystem (e.g. Peluso, 1996)? Indeed, restoring forests, especially at large scale, straddles

different ownerships and rights, alters land use, generates value as well as opportunity costs, and is subject to diverse formal and informal rules at different political scales, from local to international (Mansourian, 2016; 2017). In many cases, the landscapes in question include protected areas of different categories, which also generates governance challenges. Governance has been identified as a priority by several researchers engaged in large-scale restoration (e.g. McDonald et al., 2016). Yet, although the topics of forest governance and protected area governance are well addressed in the literature (e.g. Cashore et al., 2004; Agrawal et al., 2008; Borrini-Feyerabend et al., 2013), this paper is among the few (e.g. Guariguata & Brancalion, 2014; Wilson & Cagalanan, 2016) that address governance in the context of the process of large-scale forest restoration in landscapes that include protected areas, and is one of the few that focuses on how to improve practice.

Governance is understood by different actors in a variety of ways (Van Kersbergen & van Waarden, 2004). Here, governance refers to the wider decision-making processes related to who decides and how; it encompasses policies, institutions, processes and power (Swiderska et al., 2008) and is often impacted by historical legacies of protected area establishment (Borrini-Feyerabend et al., 2013). A detailed review of governance and FLR can be found in Mansourian (2016; 2017) and Reinecke and Blum (2018).

Practitioners engaged in large-scale restoration frequently do not know where to start or how to address governance challenges. This is due, in part, to the crossdisciplinary nature of the issues, and to the large spatial scales involved which necessarily imply many stakeholders with often divergent interests (Sayer et al., 2013). In particular, it is useful for practitioners to have a framework to explore governance issues within a project setting, notably since principles for FLR refer to governance. A recent synthesis of FLR tools refers frequently to the role of governance in FLR and to the existing and needed research in this emerging field of study, however, it does not identify tools specific to FLR and governance (Chazdon & Guariguata, 2018). Using an existing inquiry-based framework (Mansourian, 2017), we worked with practitioners and researchers of three landscapes, that include diverse categories of protected areas, and were engaging in FLR, to identify governance problems and solutions and test the framework.

#### **METHODS**

We selected the framework on governance and FLR (Mansourian, 2017) as it is the only one (to our knowledge) that is designed specifically to understand governance in the context of FLR. Applying the framework to projects in different countries allowed us to examine its utility in different contexts. The choice of case studies for this analysis was in large part pragmatic: they were known to the authors and the interviewees were interested in participating. All three cases occurred within large spatial scales covering different land uses including protected areas of different categories and had undertaken restoration for at least two years. The three cases differed in their location, context and stakeholders. Our research was investigative and the case studies were instrumental (Stake, 1995) to assessing application of the framework



Park staff Rosie Smith helps visitors plant the first trees along the Skyline trail  $\ \$  Miranda Dodd (Parks Canada)

to identify governance problems and solutions. The aim in using case studies here was not to define causality or to extract generalisations (e.g. Yin, 1981; Rowley, 2002). Instead, it was to: 1) describe and understand governance challenges and solutions in each case, and to contextualise them; and 2) specifically, to test the framework.

The framework provides three types of actions that can help to assess governance challenges and solutions: mapping stakeholders, contextualising and re-scaling. To complement the framework, we designed a questionnaire and interview guide that posed openended questions along the three categories of actions (Table 1). Interviews were semi-structured. A total of 10 interviews were held, a minimum of three per case study, with interviewees selected based on two criteria: 1) they were participants in the project (project leaders, managers, partners or researchers), and 2) they had indepth knowledge of the project.

#### Table 1. Interview guide

#### Contextualising

What is the political, social, ecological and economic situation in the given area?

What are the constraints on each stakeholder group?

- What motivates each stakeholder group to restore forests (e.g. laws, food, protection of water, best use of land, value of NTFPs or timber, etc.)?
- Are there specific factors influencing the decisions to restore or not forests (e.g. payments/subsidies, free seedlings, to restore soil or water, demand for NTFPs, cultural reasons, government pressure, etc.)?
- Can these factors be classified in some way (geographical scale, financial/cultural/ecological/social/political, proximate/distant, etc.)?

#### Mapping stakeholders

Who was engaged? And why were they engaged?

Were some stakeholders excluded (or felt excluded)?

How were stakeholders identified (what process)?

How were stakeholders categorised (and what was the rationale for these categories)?

To what extent were categories helpful/harmful when dealing with individual stakeholders?

Were any other stakeholders identified later in the process as needing to be engaged?

If you could do it again was there anyone else you would engage?

How do (did) different groups relate to each other (i.e. were there more powerful groups? Were there 'donors' and 'recipients'? Other categories, etc.)?

Were there any tensions or power issues between different stakeholders (and if so, what and why)?

What motivated these stakeholders to engage in restoration?

Are there winners and losers? Is it clear who they are?

What was/is planned to compensate losers?

#### **Re-scaling**

What geographical scale(s) was(were) considered for the 'project' (e.g. community, village, district, landscape, national, etc.)?

How did the geographical scale of the project correspond (or not) to an administrative scale?

Were there supportive institutions at the project scale (and if yes, which ones)?

Were there harmful/obstructive institutions at the project scale (and if yes, which ones)?

Were new institutions set up at the project scale (and if yes, which ones)?

Were wider external influences on the target location (from another scale) considered (and if so, which scale, which influences, and were they positive/negative)?

More generally how (and to what extent) were other geographical scales taken into account?

#### Any additional comments on governance problems and solutions?

Triangulation via multiple sources is a strength of the case study method (Rowley, 2002)); each researcher was familiar with at least one case study. The number of interviews is relatively small but is in keeping with the limited time that practitioners may have to apply such a framework. For each case study we completed a profile using the three sets of actions in the framework. These profiles formed the basis for our analysis. Each author led on a case study and the team came together for the analysis.

#### The case studies

#### New Caledonia

In 2000, nine public and private actors came together in New Caledonia to restore the dry forest ecoregion, of which only about 1 per cent was left in two of the archipelago's three provinces: Province Nord and Province Sud along the west of the main island (Figure 1). The highly fragmented patches of dry forest include the territorial parks (IUCN category II) of Ouen Toro and the zoological and forest park of Nouméa, and the nature reserve (IUCN category IV) of Leprédour Island. Active and passive restoration techniques were used, engaging both public and private stakeholders. De facto and de jure tenure systems have influenced relationships to the forest and land, reflecting the conceptions of indigenous and settler populations respectively. Ten years since their inception, the project and partnership were formalised as the not-for-profit 'Conservatoire d'Espaces Naturels' (CEN) (of which there are 29 in France and overseas) covering three priority focal areas: dry forests, UNESCO World Heritage and invasive alien species. This formal entity is a national multi-stakeholder platform that transcends provincial borders and facilitates work across the dry forest ecoregion.

#### Canada

In 2014 in Cape Breton Highlands National Park (Figure 2; CBHNP – IUCN category II) in Nova Scotia (eastern Canada), Parks Canada launched the five-year Bring Back the Boreal project to restore forests and engage Indigenous partners<sup>2</sup> (the Mi'kmaq of Nova Scotia), stakeholders and park visitors. The project sought to reduce the pressure on regenerating forests wrought by overabundant moose. It included the creation of a 5 ha moose exclosure to encourage forest regeneration, tree-planting, and localised (20 km<sup>2</sup>) moose population reductions. Consistent with a 2012 agreement with Parks Canada, representatives of the Mi'kmaq of Nova Scotia were given the first opportunity to harvest moose.



Figure 1. Map of New Caledonia's dry forest (Source: CEN)



Figure 2. Map of Cape Breton Highlands National Park , Canada (Source: Michée Lemieux, Cape Breton Highlands National Park)

#### Ghana

In Ghana, community resource management areas (CREMAs) represent permanent, governmentrecognised bodies with legal, constitutional and management frameworks which support the integration of natural resource management with existing local production systems such as agroforestry. These areas are currently unclassified in the World Database on Protected Areas but are likely a Category V protected area. CREMAs are recognised by Ghana's Wildlife Division and are typically (and in this case), part of a wider landscape including forest reserves and national parks (Asare et al., 2013).

In 2004 in the Wassa Amenfi landscape in western Ghana, farmers joined together to form the Achichire-Sureso-Pebaseman (ASP) CREMA oriented towards tree planting (Figure 3). The ASP CREMA is found in a landscape with a mosaic of forests including other effective area-based conservation measures (OECMs) (Jonas et al., 2018), production forest reserves, privately-owned tree plantations and a variety of agricultural uses. The predominant agricultural activity and primary industry in the landscape is cocoa farming which is the main driver of the local economy.



Figure 3. Achichire-Sureso-Pebaseman CREMA, Ghana. (Source: Craig Beatty, IUCN).

#### RESULTS

In this section, we firstly highlight the governance problems and solutions that emerged in the three case studies, then briefly discuss the application of the framework.

#### Identifying governance problems and solutions

Application of the framework revealed governance problems for the implementation of forest restoration projects, such as inter-agency incoherence, and highlighted instances where governance solutions, such as improvements in tenure, assisted FLR implementation.

#### **Governance problems**

#### **Overlapping** jurisdictions

Overlaps between sectors and between indigenous and government institutions were revealed. For example, in New Caledonia, each province has its own environmental policy, leading to some difficulty operating at the scale of the dry forest which crosses two provinces. In Ghana, national policies that promote agroforestry, when implemented at the local level may be problematic if not adapted to the local context: the initial top-down development of the ASP CREMA led to early disengagement by members.

Both in New Caledonia and Canada, differences between indigenous perceptions and understandings of institutions and those of the state generated challenges. *"Everyone has different points of view of what a national park is and what is its mission (...) and for the Mi'kmaq, the park is an artificial line put down by nonnatives and means nothing"* (interviewee CA23). Similarly, mismatches between ecological and social systems were apparent. In CBHNP, distinct jurisdictions in the wider landscape reflect a mismatch between the social and the natural systems. The problem of moose overbrowsing extends beyond the park's boundaries, so constraining the boundaries of the project to the national park was a limiting political choice.

#### Inter-institutional relationships

Governance challenges cross scales both horizontally and vertically. In New Caledonia, the agriculture and mining sectors generate challenges for FLR, as they compete for scarce land. In Nova Scotia, negotiations over harvesting rights between the Mi'kmaq and the province of Nova Scotia complicate moose reduction for the purpose of forest restoration for Parks Canada. Conversely, Parks Canada's partnership with the Mi'kmaq may strain its relationship with the province since the lands surrounding the park belong to the provincial government, which severely limits moose hunting in a large protected wilderness area north of CBHNP.

Tensions may emerge between departments due to their differing mandates. In Nova Scotia, the Department of Natural Resources, which is responsible for wildlife and forest, encourages moose reductions through hunting licenses, while the Department of Environment, which is responsible for protected areas, discourages it implicitly through a ban on motorised vehicles.

#### Conflicts over tenure rights

Tenure of land, forests, trees, and goods and services from the trees, directly affect FLR implementation. In New Caledonia and Canada, where there are conflicting tenure systems between traditional authorities and settlers and historical dispossessions, the problem is all the more apparent.

Territorial disputes exist between indigenous Kanaks and settlers in New Caledonia, "We have mapped each tribe (...) The zones that overlap are the zones of confrontation" (interviewee NC1). Today, forest clearance continues to be used and "fire is a tool for protests; contested lands are burnt" (interviewee NC1). Also, recent land reform in New Caledonia has led to the fragmentation of private property, leading to much smaller individual plots, further fragmenting the dry forests.

Tenure in the wider landscape impacts restoration activity, as found in Canada, where the non-Indigenous communities neighbouring the park felt excluded from moose harvesting opportunities. This lack of broader engagement generated opposition: "*More early and repeated local community engagement may have reduced tensions and objection to the project*" (interviewee CA3).

#### Stakeholder power dynamics

Power dynamics affected the restoration process in all three case studies. In CBHNP, power relations emerged with guides and local community members often feeling powerless against government departments which prioritised Indigenous partners for the moose reduction. Tensions remain between communities, guides, the federation of anglers and hunters and the Nova Scotia government on overall moose management and between the Mi'kmaq, and communities and hunting interests. These are all essentially centred on the economic value of moose, although there are also tensions related to the perceived alteration of an ecosystem that is valued. More broadly, the project in CBHNP has exposed longheld grievances. There are no Mi'kmaq communities proximal to the park and so some local residents, including those whose properties were expropriated during the park's establishment, perceive this project as inviting people from outside their community to take their historically held resources. In response, Chief Rod Googoo (2015) wrote: *"For decades, Mi'kmaq were denied access to traditional resources while others exploited them; Mi'kmaq were forcibly removed from our traditional lands next to these resources and moved to reserves."* 

In Ghana, elite capture and a lack of accountability for decisions within the CREMA Executive Committee have caused tensions (Baruah, 2017). Furthermore, the way the ASP CREMA was initially founded, beginning with the top level Executive Committee, rather than with the inter-village-level Community local Resource Management Committees (CRMCs), was problematic. Without CRMCs being part of the CREMA's initial design, the institution was not inclusive of the communities which in theory formed part of the CREMA. As noted by one interviewee, "The building blocks of any qood CREMA are the CRMCs" (interviewee GH2).

In New Caledonia, although different stakeholders are represented on the CEN, the public sector partners have a stronger voice. In the same case study, whilst the scientific partners were initially part of the ten-member consortium, they were sidelined to an advisory role when the CEN was established as it was felt that too much effort had focused on research rather than implementation in the first phases of the project; this remains a bone of contention between the different partners in the programme.

#### **Governance solutions**

#### Supportive policies and frameworks

Policies may provide a supportive environment for engaging in restoration and may generate specific incentives and resources for FLR. In Ghana, four political frameworks support FLR implementation: the 1986 national agroforestry policy, the government's commitment to the Bonn Challenge, the REDD+ strategy, and the National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan which focuses notably both on restoration and on the role of CREMAs in biodiversity conservation. In New Caledonia, the French State provides funding via a multi-year budget provided by France which includes long-term core funding for the dry forest programme (Mansourian & Vallauri, 2014). Commitments for reconciliation between the Canadian Government and



Cocoa farmers in the CREMA catchment, such as this one, have agreed to restoration activities on their farms  $\degree$  G. Walters

Indigenous People provided support for Indigenous partnerships for the *Bring Back the Boreal* project.

#### Clarifying tenure

Clarifying and addressing tenure issues has helped to advance restoration. For example, following conflict between the indigenous Kanaks and the settlers, land redistribution is being implemented in New Caledonia as a governance solution. Tenure systems influence restoration implementation, as different restoration strategies are required for private, public and customary lands. With about half of the dry forests on private lands, the engagement of landowners is negotiated individually. "We have to work delicately with individual landowners since if it annoys them, they can burn everything" (interviewee NC2).

In Ghana, a tree tenure policy was promoted to incentivise farmers to engage in FLR. According to one interviewee (GH3), "The fear before then was that if they [farmers] planted the trees, the government would take them (...) there was an initiative by the Forest Services Division to register planted trees off reserves on cocoa farms but farmers did not have copies of the registration forms. IUCN subsequently held discussions with the district Forestry authorities and made copies of the (...) tree registration certificates for the farmers (...) Following that exercise, farmers felt more convinced that the planted trees were theirs and felt motivated to plant trees in their cocoa and food crop farms" (interviewee GH1).

#### *Convening structures*

Institutions that help bring stakeholders together to achieve restoration present an important governance solution. For example, in New Caledonia, the creation in 2011 of the national level CEN (made up of both public sector and civil society entities) has provided a means of unifying actions across provincial scales and bringing both public and private actors under the same umbrella. Decisions are taken collectively by the representative board, although as noted by an interviewee (NC3), ultimately public entities carry more weight because of the funding they bring and their political responsibility to manage natural heritage.

In Ghana, CREMAs are an important 'participatory model' encouraging local communities to engage in forest conservation and management. They bring together stakeholders from the national (Forestry Commission) and district levels (District Assembly) with international and local NGOs, allowing vertical linkages across levels. Furthermore, they promote exchanges between CREMA members and the private sector (e.g. timber companies). Increased participation of women in the ASP CREMA has led to their empowerment and more generally, the ASP CREMA is enabling women and men to question accountability of elders, chiefs or educated elites despite the cultural norms of not doing so.

#### Benefit sharing and compensation

Financial compensation can be an important tool to redress imbalances between winners and losers in FLR. To date, no direct financial compensation has been applied although there are discussions in New Caledonia to adopt the French policy that reflects the mitigation "avoidance, minimisation hierarchy of and compensation". In Ghana, the reluctance of

communities to join the CREMA was partly attributed to the fact that returns from restoring trees are uncertain and not immediate. Identifying benefits and explicitly incorporating them in the restoration process also provides added incentives to engage in FLR. For example, in Canada, moose harvesting reduced pressure on the forest whilst providing the Mi'kmaq with access to a culturally significant resource.

#### Cultural incentives

Culture may serve to promote restoration. For example, in New Caledonia, traditionally, the Kanak culture has strong ties with land and forests: "humans define themselves according to their land" (interviewee NC1). The forest is associated with natural medicines, although such traditions are being lost among the younger generation and some forest sites are considered sacred where people can only enter for particular ceremonies (Noullet, 2007). In Nova Scotia, moose harvesting is a sacred, cultural event for Mi'kmaq whose traditions state that the people promised the moose that they would hunt it with love, treat it with respect, share it with those in need and harvest all of its parts. As highlighted by an interviewee (CA2), the Mi'kmaq were motivated to take part in CBHNP's forest restoration project out of: 1) concern for the declining state of the forests, 2) a desire to become co-jurisdictional partners in managing resources, and 3) concern for their livelihoods related to moose hunting and tourism. More generally, Parks Canada recognises the linkages between ecological integrity and human activities, and Indigenous People are partners in most of Parks Canada's hyper-abundant wildlife management projects (Parks Canada, 2017). In Ghana, CREMAs are typically built on cultural norms (Asare et al., 2013). However, if customary authorities and the communities they govern are not properly involved, it can result in disengagement from the CREMA development process (Gilli, 2018).

#### Utility of the framework

Restoration of protected area landscapes can be critical for improving human wellbeing and conserving biodiversity (Keenleyside et al., 2012). Furthermore, restoring across wider landscapes, between protected areas to improve connectivity (Worboys et al., 2010) is an increasing focus of large-scale restoration initiatives (Holl, 2017). However, restoration of these landscapes is complex and involves multiple stakeholder groups, "requiring interdisciplinary collaboration to identify solutions" (Wilson & Cagalanan, 2016:14). The

Table 2. Governance	problems and	l solutions for	forest landsca	pe restoration
			10100010100000	

Governance problems for FLR	Example	
Overlapping jurisdictions	In Canada and New Caledonia, indigenous territories overlap with provincial boundaries.	
Inter-institutional relationships	Differing access rules between the Department of Natural Resources and the Department of Environment in Canada.	
Conflicts over tenure rights	In New Caledonia, fire is used as a form of protest because of contested tenure.	
Stakeholder power dynamics	In Ghana, the top-down creation of the CREMA encouraged elite capture and a lack of accountability.	
Governance solutions for FLR	Example	
Supportive national-level policies and frameworks	In Ghana, government commitments to the Bonn Challenge on FLR provided a favourable context for local restoration actions.	
Clarifying tenure	Certificates for tree tenure in Ghana incentivised farmers to participate in restoration.	
Convening structures	Establishing a multi-stakeholder platform in New Caledonia (CEN) to institutionalise FLR.	
Benefit sharing and compensation	In Canada, moose harvesting reduced pressure on the forest whilst providing the Mi'kmaq access to a culturally significant resource.	
Cultural incentives	Strong ties with land and forests and other natural resources for Indigenous Peoples in both Canada and New Caledonia promote restoration.	

framework we applied helps practitioners in protected area landscapes to reflect on several issues central to restoration including engaging with stakeholders, considering scale within FLR initiatives and understanding how the restoration context influences outcomes. Thus, it helps to identify solutions to restoration governance issues in their projects.

We found (as did our interviewees) that the framework was generally valuable in identifying both governance problems and solutions for FLR (Table 2), and restoration more generally, in all three projects. The process of reflecting on the framework's three dimensions brought out some issues that interviewees had not previously considered important. For example, in Ghana, interviewees realised that the creation of the Community Resource Management Committees (as advocated by the CREMA model, but not actually implemented in the ASP CREMA), might support better restoration and governance as opposed to the top-down management of the past. In Canada, the issue of categorisation and engagement of stakeholders at different scales surfaced during the interviews. In New Caledonia, the influence of private landowners and Kanak populations, as well as that of different spatial scales became apparent in interviews.

While the contextualising dimension of the framework was quite open-ended, it proved challenging to limit the breadth of the research. On the one hand, some specific issues were not addressed directly by the questionnaire (e.g. culture) but on the other hand during the discussion with interviewees, many of these issues did emerge.

The 'rescaling' component of the methodology was particularly useful given the scale of the projects concerned. Frequently, project implementers focus on the scale at which they are working, such as a particular protected area, without considering how the project interacts with other scales, especially on policy implementation and influencing. Through our interviews and by probing the issue of scale, the interviewees made linkages across spatial scales that they had not initially considered. For example, in New Caledonia, piecing together the site-level restoration work with the ecoregion-level plans, the provinces' policies, priorities in customary areas, communal land use plans and the influences of global nickel markets, began to provide a comprehensive picture of the governance challenges facing the dry forest restoration programme. In Ghana, the CREMA, although desiring to work at a landscape scale, did not have extensive collaboration with the managers of the forest reserve nearby.

The framework is designed specifically to avoid normative judgements on governance. As such, issues of accountability, transparency, representation, etc. were purposefully not explicit in any of the questions. Some of these issues did emerge in the interviews however, as there is a strong association in many people's minds between governance more broadly and 'good governance'.

#### DISCUSSION

#### Comparison and analysis of case studies

#### Contextualising

Historical, cultural, economic, political, social and ecological contexts all play important roles in translating FLR objectives into practice (Reinecke & Blum, 2018). Associating context and stakeholders serves to understand motivations and determine effective, locallyrelevant, engagement strategies (Ostrom, 2007). The relationship between context and stakeholders will determine the feasibility of FLR and can transform governance from being a problem to being a solution; for example, transforming a restoration project within a protected area by scaling it up to the landscape enables the active engagement of more stakeholders. As an FLR project changes over time, the landscape and stakeholders also evolve, necessitating re-assessments (Mansourian, 2016).

In our case studies, 'contextualising' brought together political, historical, economic, social and cultural factors that influence stakeholders' relationships to the



Tree nursery in New Caledonia © CEN

restoration process. Economic aspects form part of the context (Holl, 2017). Much of the conflict in Nova Scotia could be traced back to the economic implications of harvesting moose. In Ghana, economic incentives to participate in the CREMA were important given the local development challenges faced by farmers and their families.

Tenure and property rights emerged as an important theme in all three case studies. In Ghana it concerned the rights to trees, in New Caledonia, the rights to land and in Canada the rights to moose and natural resources more generally. Tenure and property rights shape engagement in or opposition to the restoration process.

All three case studies are situated in countries where settlers and Indigenous populations are still seeking to establish acceptable modes of governance. Conflict – open or latent – between different communities, plays out in the practice of restoration. For example, in New Caledonia forests continue to be set on fire as a means of protest.

The evolution of the projects is particularly interesting. In New Caledonia, the more formal establishment of a multi-stakeholder body (the CEN) provided a legal status and financial security for the dry forest restoration programme which for 10 years had operated as an 'informal', yet powerful, multi-stakeholder partnership. Both New Caledonia and Ghana highlight new institutions (the CEN and the CREMAs respectively) to promote restoration. In Canada on the other hand, the project worked exclusively with and through existing institutions. Given that the project in Canada is the newest, this could evolve in the future.

#### Mapping stakeholders

Understanding stakeholders, their needs and perspectives, and engaging them accordingly, helps to secure sustainability (Reed et al., 2009). Overly simple analyses of stakeholders and superficial stakeholder engagement have been criticised for missing key relationships among stakeholders and stakeholder relationships to the project (e.g. Cooke & Kothari, 2001) and power is commonly missing from institutional analyses (Kashwan et al., 2018). The framework and methodology used here are intended to give insights into how stakeholders may be identified and their relationships 'mapped', and how the project has engaged with them. Stakeholder involvement and power may also evolve over time.

Engaging stakeholders forms a best practice visible in restoration and conservation literatures (e.g.

Keenleyside et al., 2012; McDonald et al., 2016; Sterling et al., 2017). The diversity of potential stakeholders can be seen in all case studies. Furthermore, when exploring the influence of different scales even more stakeholder groups emerge. Interestingly, volunteers played a prominent role in New Caledonia and Canada in the planting operations, but did not appear as a major stakeholder group.

Terminology and in particular the classification of different groups as 'stakeholders' proved problematic. In Canada in particular, clear distinctions between 'stakeholders' and 'interested parties' proved possibly too divisive as highlighted by one interviewee (CA3).

One emerging lesson is that grouping 'stakeholders' categories Indigenous/nonunder broad (e.g. Indigenous in Canada and New Caledonia) is not always helpful and "it's easy to get stuck in categories and silos" (interviewee CA2). Kowasch (2014), for instance, shows how Kanaks in one tribe in the North Province value some areas for their sacredness, while another tribe (also in the North) feels no attachment to ancient sacred sites. Working with private landowners over the last 15 years, the New Caledonia Dry Forest Programme also had to negotiate individual deals with different landowners. More generally, individual differences and motivations can significantly affect the relationship to a restoration programme (similarly to integrated conservation and development projects, see Blom et al., 2010); broad categorisations may hide individual preferences and preclude better stakeholder engagement.

Understanding stakeholder motivations is central to reaching a satisfactory negotiated outcome (Allendorf et al., 2013). In Canada, reducing moose populations for ecological integrity and asserting the right to harvest moose are related actions but with different underlying motivations.

#### Re-scaling

There are multiple geographic and jurisdictional scales that interact and create complexity for governance in FLR (e.g. Newig et al., 2016). The protected area landscape under restoration rarely coincides with an administrative unit; also, multiple jurisdictional scales impact on the landscape, both at smaller and larger scales (Cash et al., 2006; Görg, 2007; Ekroos et al., 2017). Re-scaling refers in this case to the observation and tracking of influences from different scales, be they formal (e.g. a Ministry, policies or formal partnerships) or informal (e.g. informal partnerships or traditional forest use and rights systems). Re-scaling can be particularly important ensuring connectivity across



several protected areas, in broader, often agricultural landscapes (Chassot & Monge-Arias, 2012).

Understanding the influence of and interconnections between different spatial scales on the landscape helps to broaden implementation choices (Cash et al., 2006). Influences from other scales were teased out through our analysis. For example, in New Caledonia, restoration planning and objective-setting is focused at the scale of the dry forest ecoregion. In contrast, individual private landowners need to operationalise restoration, customary authorities need to be on board, communes can help to integrate restoration in their plans, CEN partners have a say, and the role of the French state in funding restoration actions in the long term is critical.

The influence of the national scale is also apparent in all three case studies. In Canada, federal elections as well as wider negotiations between First Nations' groups and the Government of Canada influenced the project; in New Caledonia, funding from the French government is critical to maintain the dry forest programme, and in Ghana, commitments by the government to restore 2 million ha of forests provide a national framework for the CREMA's restoration work, while also potentially addressing landscape connectivity with nearby protected areas.

In the case of Ghana, operationalising national policies and laws at a local level was often difficult. Although there are legal provisions for supporting the establishment of CREMAs, their creation takes time and funding. However, in creating the CREMA, members obtain increased recognition by the state and other actors, and can increase their participation in national initiatives such as national restoration efforts. In New Caledonia, the dry forest programme, and later the CEN, mobilised partners so that they could scale up their efforts and act as a cohesive group vis-à-vis other political actors, notably the private sector or the French State.

Overall, our analysis also revealed that governance problems that emerged were not mirrored by governance solutions. This is not surprising as this assessment also brought out the fact that there remains limited effort on systematically tackling governance challenges in large-scale restoration projects. Follow-up work to apply such a framework could ensure that governance solutions can be identified for all highlighted problems.

#### **CONCLUSIONS**

Governance is a complex process that interacts with another complex process, that of restoring forested landscapes. Finding tools to simplify the analysis of these governance challenges and to negotiate governance solutions can help to advance FLR implementation.

The use of the framework and related questionnaire helped us to extract four categories of governance

challenges: overlapping jurisdictions, inter-institutional relationships, conflict over tenure rights, and stakeholder power dynamics. It also revealed five categories of governance solutions: supportive nationallevel policies and frameworks, clarifying tenure, convening structures, benefit sharing and compensation, and cultural incentives. These are by no means exhaustive, and may be different in other contexts.

We found some overlap between the three areas of investigation. For example, contextualisation may overlap with mapping stakeholders and identifying distant stakeholders may overlap with re-scaling. Dividing the three core components into sub-categories could facilitate data collection. In particular, we would suggest that the contextualisation section requires subcategorisation according to cultural, ecological, economic, social and political factors.

The addition of background studies from the restoration sites related to some of the questions also proved useful for filling in some information gaps and understanding the interviewees' results. Future use of the framework should include this project site literature review.

It is clear that this framework fills an important gap of existing FLR tools which help practitioners to identify and resolve governance issues in their restoration projects and in protected area landscapes. However, since our research covered just three projects, we recommend further testing the proposed tool in order to validate its use and to increase the knowledge base on governance and large-scale forest restoration. While in this application of the framework, projects were already underway, it would be useful to test the framework in other conditions such as in a pre-project situation (to define interventions) and in ongoing monitoring of projects.

#### **ENDNOTES**

<sup>1</sup>Defined by Worldwide Fund for Nature and International Union for Conservation of Nature as "a planned process that aims to regain ecological integrity and enhance human wellbeing in deforested or degraded landscapes" (WWF and IUCN, 2000).

<sup>2</sup>In Canada, Indigenous People are considered partners, rather than stakeholders, because they have constitutionally protected rights and expect to interact with federal, provincial and territorial governments on a Nation-to-Nation basis.

<sup>3</sup>Interviewees are referenced according to the case study (NC = New Caledonia, GH = Ghana and CA = Canada); interviews in New Caledonia were conducted in French, excerpts here have been translated.

#### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Discussions and presentations at the workshop 'Governance and Forest Landscape Restoration' at the World Conservation Congress in September 2016 helped to shape this work. We would like to thank Anne Sgard, Chetan Kumar and Nigel Dudley for their feedback on earlier drafts. We are indebted to the following interviewees who provided us with their valuable time and insight for this work: Manali Baruah, Saadia Bobtoya, Hubert Géraux, Emma do Khac, Samuel Kofi Nyame, Roger Mathivet, Pierre Plouzennec, Derek Quann, Rosie Smith and Eric Zscheile.

#### **ABOUT THE AUTHORS**

**Stephanie Mansourian** is an environmental consultant. She is also a research associate with Geneva University (Switzerland) where she did her PhD specifically on governance challenges related to forest landscape restoration. Her work in the last 20 years has spanned several environmental topics, including restoration, air pollution, environmental governance, protected areas, among others. She is a member of the Society for Ecological Restoration and is on the IUFRO Task Force on Forest Adaptation and Restoration under Global Change.

**Gretchen Walters**, at the time of writing this article worked for the International Union for Conservation of Nature's Global Forest and Climate Change Program. She is an anthropologist and ecologist, whose work over more than 20 years, has focused on biological and social aspects of natural resource use and governance in Sub-Saharan Africa, often in protected area landscapes and in the context of implementing conservation projects and changing cultural and historical contexts. She is now an Assistant Professor of Conservation and Development Practice at the University of Lausanne, Switzerland. She is a member of the IUCN World Commission on Protected Areas, amongst others.

**Emily Gonzales** is an Ecological Restoration Specialist with Parks Canada. Her current responsibilities include strategic conservation planning, policy development for the management of hyperabundant wildlife, and restoration with Indigenous partners. Her PhD explored the ecological processes that facilitate species invasions and the role of herbivores in shaping plant communities. She teaches in the Restoration of Natural Systems program at the University of Victoria (Canada) and is the Chair of the Science and Policy Committee for the Society for Ecological Restoration.

#### REFERENCES

- Agrawal, A., Chhatre, A. and Hardin, R. (2008). Changing governance of the world's forests. *Science*, 320(5882), 1460– 1462.
- Allendorf, T. D., Das, R., Bose, A., Ray, B., Chaudhuri, K. D., Brock, S. and Horwich, R. H. (2013). Motivations of the community forest protection forces of the Manas Biosphere Reserve in Assam, India. *International Journal of Sustainable Development & World Ecology*, 20(5), 426–432.
- Aronson, J. and Alexander, S. (2013). Ecosystem restoration is now a global priority: Time to roll up our sleeves. *Restoration Ecology*, *21*(3), 293–296.
- Asare, R. A., Kyei, A. and Mason, J. J. (2013). The community resource management area mechanism: A strategy to manage African forest resources for REDD+. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. B*, 368(1625), 20120311.
- Baruah, M. (2017). Facipulation and elite formation: Community resource management in southwestern Ghana. *Conservation* and Society, 15(4), 371–383.
- Blom, B., Sunderland, T. and Murdiyarso, D. (2010). Getting REDD to work locally: Lessons learned from integrated conservation and development projects. *Environmental Science & Policy*, *13*(2), 164–172.
- Borrini-Feyerabend, G., Dudley, N., Jaeger, T., Lassen, B., Pathak Broome, N., Phillips, A. and Sandwith, T. (2013). *Governance* of Protected Areas: From understanding to action. Best Practice Protected Area Guidelines Series No. 20, Gland, Switzerland: IUCN. xvi + 124pp.
- Cash, D. W., Adger, W. N., Berkes, F., Garden, P., Lebel, L., Olsson, P., ... and Young, O. (2006). Scale and cross-scale dynamics: Governance and information in a multilevel world. *Ecology and Society*, *11*(2).
- Cashore, B. W., Auld, G. and Newsom, D. (2004). *Governing through markets: Forest certification and the emergence of non-state authority*. New Haven and London: Yale University Press.
- Chassot, O. and Monge-Arias, G. (2012). Connectivity conservation of the Great Green Macaw's landscape in Costa Rica and Nicaragua (1994–2012). *PARKS*, *18*(1), 61.
- Chazdon, R. L. and Guariguata, M. R. (2018). Decision support tools for forest landscape restoration: Current status and future outlook. *CIFOR Occasional Paper*, (183).
- Cooke, B. and Kothari, U. (Eds.). (2001). *Participation: The new tyranny?* Zed Books.
- Ekroos, J., Leventon, J., Fischer, J., Newig, J. and Smith, H. G. (2017). Embedding evidence on conservation interventions within a context of multilevel governance. *Conservation Letters*, 10(1), 139–145.
- Gilli, M. (2018). Taking place? Formalization through communitybased resource management and shea nut certification in Ghana. Master's Thesis, Department of Geography, University of Zurich.
- Googoo, R. (2015). Mi'kmaw moose hunt not a cull; it's cultural. *The Chronicle Herald*. Published 27 November 2015. Last updated 28 November 2015. <u>http://thechronicleherald.ca/</u> <u>opinion/1324653-mi%E2%80%99kmaw-moose-hunt-not-a-</u> <u>cull-it%E2%80%99s-cultural</u>. Accessed 28 March 2017.
- Görg, C. (2007). Landscape governance: The "politics of scale" and the "natural" conditions of places. *Geoforum*, 38(5), 954– 966.

- Guariguata, M. R. and Brancalion, P. H. (2014). Current challenges and perspectives for governing forest restoration. Forests, 5(12): 3022-3030.
- Hobbs, R. J., Hallett, L. M., Ehrlich, P. R. and Mooney, H. A. (2011). Intervention ecology: Applying ecological science in the twenty-first century. *BioScience*, 61(6), 442–450.
- Holl, K. D. (2017). Restoring tropical forests from the bottom up. Science, 355(6324), 455–456.
- Jonas, H. D., MacKinnon, K., Dudley, N., Hockings, M., Jessen, S., Laffoley, D., MacKinnon, D., ... Woodley, S. (2018). Editorial essay: Other Effective Area Based Conservation Measures: From Aichi Target 11 to the Post 2020 Biodiversity Framework. PARKS, 24: 9–16.
- Kashwan, P., MacLean, L. M. and García-López, G. A. (2018). Rethinking power and institutions in the shadows of neoliberalism: (An introduction to a special issue of World Development). *World Development*.
- Keenleyside, K., Dudley, N., Cairns, S., Hall, C. and Stolton, S. (2012). Ecological restoration for protected areas: Principles, guidelines and best practices (Vol. 18). Gland, Switzerland: IUCN.
- Kowasch, M. (2014). Fieldwork in a context of decolonization: The example of a French Overseas Territory (New Caledonia). *Erdkunde*, 251–264.
- Mansourian, S. (2016). Understanding the relationship between governance and forest landscape restoration. *Conservation* and Society, 14(3), 267–278.
- Mansourian, S. (2017). Governance and forest landscape restoration: A framework to support decision-making. *Journal* for Nature Conservation, 37, 21–30.
- Mansourian, S. and Vallauri, D. (2014). Restoring forest landscapes: Important lessons learnt. *Environmental Management*, 53(2), 241–251.
- McDonald, T., Gann, G., Jonson, J. and Dixon, K. (2016). International standards for the practice of ecological restoration-including principles and key concepts. Washington, DC: Society for Ecological Restoration.
- Newig, J., Schulz, D. and Jager, N. W. (2016). Disentangling puzzles of spatial scales and participation in environmental governance—the case of governance re-scaling through the European water framework directive. *Environmental Management*, 58(6), 998–1014.
- Noullet, M. (2007). Valorisation de la forêt sêche de Nouvelle Calédonie : Etude des plantes utiles de la zone ouest des aires coutumières Paicî-Camuki et Ajië-Aro. Nouméa: IRD.
- Ostrom, E. (2007). Sustainable Social-Ecological Systems: An Impossibility? Presented at the 2007 Annual Meetings of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, "Science and Technology for Sustainable Well-Being," 15–19 February in San Francisco.
- Parks Canada (2017). Directive on Hyperabundant Wildlife Population Management. Protected Areas, Establishment and Conservation Directorate. Gatineau, Quebec: Parks Canada Agency.
- Peluso, N. L. (1996). Fruit trees and family trees in an anthropogenic forest: Ethics of access, property zones, and environmental change in Indonesia. *Comparative Studies in Society and History*, 38(3), 510–548.
- Reed, M. S., Graves, A., Dandy, N., Posthumus, H., Hubacek, K., Morris, J., ... and Stringer, L. C. (2009). Who's in and why? A

typology of stakeholder analysis methods for natural resource management. *Journal of Environmental Management*, *90*(5), 1933–1949.

- Reinecke, S. and Blum, M. (2018). Discourses across Scales on Forest Landscape Restoration. *Sustainability*, *10*(3), 613.
- Rowley, J. (2002). Using case studies in research. *Management Research News*, 25(1), 16–27.
- Sayer, J., Sunderland, T., Ghazoul, J., Pfund, J. L., Sheil, D., Meijaard, E., ... and van Oosten, C. (2013). Ten principles for a landscape approach to reconciling agriculture, conservation, and other competing land uses. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, *110*(21), 8349–8356.

Stake, R. E. (1995). The art of case study research. Sage.

Sterling, E.J., Betley, E., Sigouin, A., Gomez, A., Toomey, A., Cullman, G., Malone, C., Pekor, A., Arengo, F., Blair, M. and Filardi, C. (2017). Assessing the evidence for stakeholder engagement in biodiversity conservation. *Biological Conservation*, 209, 159–171.

- Swiderska, K., Roe, D., Siegele, L. and Grieg-Gran, M. (2008). The governance of nature and the nature of governance: Policy that works for biodiversity and livelihoods (Vol. 8). London: IIED.
- van Kersbergen, K. and van Waarden, F. (2004). 'Governance' as a bridge between disciplines: Cross-disciplinary inspiration regarding shifts in governance and problems of governability, accountability and legitimacy. In *European Corporate Governance* (pp. 64–80). London: Routledge.
- Wilson, S. J. and Cagalanan, D. (2016). Governing restoration: Strategies, adaptations and innovations for tomorrow's forest landscapes. *World Development Perspectives*, 4, 11–15.
- Worboys, G. L., Francis, W. L. and Lockwood, M. (eds.) (2010). Connectivity Conservation Management: A Global Guide. London: Earthscan.
- WWF and IUCN (2000). *Minutes of the forests reborn workshop in Segovia*. Unpublished.
- Yin, R. K. (1981). The case study crisis: Some answers. Administrative Science Quarterly, 26(1), 58–65.

#### RESUMEN

Los desafíos que plantea la gobernanza -incluidos la propiedad, la toma de decisiones, la rendición de cuentas, y la distribución de los costos y beneficios- pueden impedir la restauración del paisaje forestal en los paisajes de áreas protegidas. La comprensión y el abordaje de estos desafíos pueden mejorar los resultados de restauración del paisaje forestal. Pusimos a prueba la utilidad de aplicar un marco existente centrado en tres acciones para comprender la gobernanza –realización de un mapeo de las partes interesadas, contextualización y reclasificación. El marco fue aplicado a las iniciativas de restauración a gran escala en los bosques secos de Nueva Caledonia, en Cape Breton Highlands National Park en Canada, y en un Área de Gestión de Recursos de la Comunidad en la región occidental de Ghana, para identificar desafios y soluciones de gobernanza relacionados con la restauración de paisajes forestales en diferentes contextos. La aplicación del marco reveló cuatro tipos de desafíos relacionados con la gobernanza: superposición de jurisdicciones, relaciones interinstitucionales, conflictos sobre derechos de tenencia y dinámicas de poder de las partes interesadas, y cinco tipos de soluciones a los desafíos que plantea la gobernanza: políticas de apoyo a nivel nacional, aclaración de los derechos a la tenencia, estructuras de convocatoria, compensación y distribución de los beneficios, e incentivos culturales. En general, encontramos que el marco ayudó a los entrevistados a conceptualizar los desafíos relacionados con la gobernanza y las formas de abordarlos.

#### RÉSUMÉ

Les problèmes de gouvernance - y compris l'appropriation, la prise de décision, le cadre de responsabilisation et le partage des coûts et des bénéfices - peuvent faire obstacle à la restauration des paysages forestiers dans les aires protégées. Il est donc important de comprendre et de relever ces défis afin d'améliorer les résultats de la restauration des paysages forestiers. Nous avons voulu vérifier l'utilité d'un cadre existant qui vise trois actions pour mieux comprendre la gouvernance: identifier les parties prenantes, contextualiser et redimensionner. Ce cadre a été appliqué aux initiatives de restauration à grande échelle dans la forêt sèche de Nouvelle-Calédonie, dans le parc national des Hautes-Terres-du-Cap-Breton au Canada et dans une zone de gestion des ressources communautaires dans la région occidentale du Ghana, pour examiner les problèmes de gouvernance et les solutions en matière de restauration de paysages forestiers dans divers contextes. La mise en oeuvre de ce cadre a révélé quatre problèmes notables de gouvernance: des juridictions qui se chevauchent, des relations interinstitutionnelles, des conflits de régimes fonciers et de droits de propriété, et la dynamique liée au pouvoir des parties prenantes; ainsi que cinq solutions de gouvernance: des politiques de soutien au niveau national, la clarification du régime foncier, des structures de consultation, des mesures d'indemnisation et de partage des avantages, et des incitations culturelles. Dans l'ensemble, nous avons constaté que ce cadre a aidé les personnes interrogées à conceptualiser les problèmes de gouvernance et à identifier les moyens de les résoudre.



### SHORT COMMUNICATION HIMA FOR PEACE: ACTIONS SPEAK LOUDER THAN BIRDS

#### Assad Serhal

Email: aserhal@spnl.org

Society for Protection of Nature in Lebanon, Awad Bldg, 6th Floor, Abdel Aziz Street, Beirut, Lebanon.

#### ABSTRACT

'Al Hima' which means a protected area or place is a traditional system of management of resources practised by indigenous people in the Arabian Peninsula.

This concept has been used by the Society for the Protection of Nature in Lebanon for conservation of Key Biodiversity Areas and as means of engaging and empowering the local community at its Hima sites. The Hima concept uses traditional, community-based approaches to conservation in order to achieve a sustainable use of the local, natural resources. Examples of the use of the Hima approach and the benefits it brings for nature and people are outlined.

Key words: Al Hima, Lebanon, traditional management, peace, community engagement

The Society for the Protection of Nature in Lebanon (SPNL), established in 1984 as a national environmental NGO, works to raise awareness of environmental issues and protect natural areas in Lebanon for the purpose of protecting birds, nature and biodiversity in collaboration with municipalities and local people. SPNL recognises the importance of involving local communities in the conservation of their natural resources. It has succeeded in reviving the Hima approach, a traditional system of resource management practised by the indigenous peoples to manage the rangelands in the Arabian Peninsula; 'Al Hima' means a protected area or place.

Upon the establishment of its Hima sites, SPNL has promoted Local Conservation Groups and Homat Alhima (Hima Youth Nature Guardians); and empowered and supported them to protect and maintain nature, species and resources in the Himas. Thus, each Hima has a group of enthusiastic young protectors who aim to prevent illegal hunting and ultimately to conserve the ecosystem of the area.

The Hima approach concentrates on empowering the local community, by upgrading their livelihoods and promoting the sustainable use of natural resources. It serves as the bridge to achieve sustainable hunting, fishing, grazing and use of water resources. Thus, the Hima concept creates a traditional and cultural community-based approach to the conservation of sites, species, habitats and people in order to achieve a sustainable use of the local, natural resources.

Promoting responsible hunting is one of the main goals of the SPNL mission, and awareness of the dangers of illegal poaching needs to be implemented throughout Lebanon, in the form of Responsible Hunting Areas, managed by a new generation of local guides and rangers, trained by SPNL experts and the Middle East Center for Responsible Hunting (MECRH) with support from BirdLife International, MAVA, CEPF, the EU Life Programme and BirdFair. In spite of its small geographical area, at least 401 species of birds have been recorded in Lebanon. The wealth and diversity of bird species makes this one of the principal assets of the country, but on the other hand amplifies the collective responsibility for their conservation.

SPNL in collaboration with the MAVA Foundation, Swiss Embassy, the Swiss Agency for Development & Cooperation (SDC) and Al Shouf Cedar Society (ACS) will be working together to unite the communities of the Shouf Mountain and West Beqaa to expand the territory of this Hima by merging the Shouf Biosphere Reserve with the west Beqaa Himas, sharing their resources for the benefit of both areas and over 20 communities,



representing over 6 per cent of the Lebanese territory and more than 5 Key Biodiversity Areas / Important

Bird Areas.

Established in 1996, the Shouf Cedars Reserve is the largest nature reserve in Lebanon, accounting for approximately 5 per cent of the territory. It is located at an altitude of between 1000 to 2000 metres in the southern half of Mount Lebanon and includes the Aammiq Wetland in the Beqaa foothills and Qaraoun artificial lake, subject to a signed MOU with the Litani River Authority in 2019. The Shouf Cedar Nature Reserve encompasses the best remaining stands of cedar forests where over 160 species of birds have been recorded including a number of globally threatened birds, such as the greater spotted eagle, imperial eagle, corncrake and Syrian serin. In the West Begaa Hima, 20,000 birds pass through the marsh in both spring and autumn, including white stork, white pelican, common crane and at least 31 species of raptor.

The Shouf project focuses on building ecological and socio-economic resilience to the impacts of anthropogenic and climate changes that are speeding up ecological degradation and biodiversity loss in the Shouf eco-cultural landscape. Improving scientific knowledge and gathering data on biodiversity indicators related to the eco-cultural landscape of the Shouf will contribute to restoring nature and species. The new generations are at the heart of this project since they constitute the future of the reserve and are the protectors of their land. It is essential to educate them on the value of the eco-cultural landscape of the Shouf, through building a new generation of environmentally aware and conscious citizens proud of their land and ready to help restore its nature.

In addition, the project will promote green growth, economic diversification and infrastructures for biodiversity conservation and socio-economic development, building on the unique territorial identity of the Shouf and on the green growth opportunities offered by the production and marketing of agroforestry products (medicinal, aromatic, edible plants, honey) and services (eco-tourism) with a special focus on the empowerment of women and youth, thanks to generous support from the Critical Ecosystem Partnership Fund (CEPF).

One such initiative is the production of a range of authentic, organic products using the knowledge of 'moune', the making of traditional preserves that has been crucial for the survival of local populations in snowy mountain areas for thousands of years. This project protects these traditional practices and conserves the know-how from generation to generation, while providing an important source of additional household income. This generates money for women in particular, living in rural areas who don't usually have access to employment, and gives them influence, benefits and respect for their work.

SPNL is leading communities in organic farming and the growing of aromatic herbs. Organic production has always been at the heart of Lebanese traditions and should be revived and enhanced for health and environmental reasons. The West Begaa Country Club, Homat Al-hima International Company and SPNL are now partners in a newly established butterfly garden in Homat Al-hima International Park, in the West Begaa region, within the Hima Kheirbet Qanafar Key Biodiversity Area. Gift shops are one of the initiatives to protect know-how and help the community while representing the Lebanese culture. The gift shops will include locally and organically produced wine, olive oil, blossom and rose water, honey, pine nuts, and books and guides on 'Homat al Hima, the way of life, for sustainable development', posters, bird boxes and bird feeders, and other artisanal products from the Hima communities. The Hima gift box will be one of the initiatives in conserving Lebanon's traditions and keeping the Lebanese people in touch with their roots no matter where they travel.

Thus, the Himas complete the three circles of environment, socio-economic benefits and community. The ultimate goal in creating Himas is to bring peace to both humans and wildlife.

#### **ABOUT THE AUTHOR**

**Assad Serhal** studied ecology and wildlife management at Oklahoma State University. The Society for the Protection of Nature in Lebanon (SPNL) was cofounded by Mr Serhal in 1984 and he now serves as Director-General of the Society. His knowledge and passion for birds were the driving force for the establishment of Lebanon's first bird sanctuaries in the early 1990s. He lobbied for the creation of nature reserves, and for the establishment of a Ministry of Environment. Mr Serhal was awarded the Midori Prize for Biodiversity in 2018.



Moon Rising over Hills and Forests of Lala © Mohamed Ali Haimour

#### RESUMEN

'Al Hima', significa que un área o lugar protegido es un sistema tradicional de gestión de recursos practicado por los pueblos indígenas en la península arábiga. Este concepto ha sido utilizado por la Sociedad para la Protección de la Naturaleza en el Líbano para la conservación de Áreas clave para la biodiversidad y como medio para comprometer y empoderar a la comunidad local en sus lugares protegidos "Hima". El concepto Hima utiliza enfoques tradicionales para la conservación basados en la comunidad para lograr un uso sostenible de los recursos naturales locales. Se describen ejemplos sobre el uso del enfoque basado en Hima y los beneficios que aporta para la naturaleza y las personas.

#### RÉSUMÉ

'Al Hima' qui désigne une aire protégée ou un lieu, est un système traditionnel de gestion des ressources, pratiquée par les peuples autochtones dans la péninsule arabique. Ce concept a été utilisé par la Société pour la Protection de la Nature au Liban pour la conservation des zones clés pour la biodiversité et comme moyen de mobiliser et de responsabiliser la communauté locale sur les sites de Hima. Le concept Hima est fondé sur des approches traditionnelles et communautaires de la conservation afin de parvenir à une utilisation durable des ressources naturelles locales. Nous décrivons des exemples d'utilisation de l'approche Hima et des avantages qu'elle apporte à la nature et aux hommes.



SHORT COMMUNICATION REMARKS ON THE VENEZUELAN PROTECTED AREAS SYSTEM AS LISTED ON THE WORLD DATABASE ON PROTECTED AREAS AND CBD AICHI TARGET 11

# Rafael E. García<sup>1</sup>, Lionel Hernández<sup>2</sup>, María Isabel Silva<sup>3</sup>, Yolinda Sumoza<sup>4</sup>, Miyel Rodríguez<sup>5</sup> and José R. García<sup>6</sup>

\*Corresponding author: rfgartzia@yahoo.de

<sup>1</sup> Vehrenkampstr. 1 Hamburg 22527, Germany

<sup>2</sup> Universidad Nacional Experimental de Guayana, Centro de Investigaciones Ecológicas de Guayana. C./Chile, Urb. Chilemex. Puerto Ordaz 8015, Venezuela
 <sup>3</sup> Ministerio del Poder Popular para Ecosocialismo y Aguas, Dirección de Vigilancia y Control. Centro Simón Bolívar, Torre Sur. Caracas 1010, Venezuela
 <sup>4</sup> Unidad Territorial para el Ecosocialismo. Redoma Guaparo, Municipio Valencia 2001, Carabobo, Venezuela
 <sup>5</sup> Universidad Centro-Occidental, Cátedra Libre de Educación Ambiental. Av. Las Industrias 3001, Barquisimeto, Venezuela

<sup>6</sup> Sociedad Venezolana de Ciencias Naturales. Avenida Sanz, Edificio Sociedad Venezolana de Ciencias Naturales, El Marqués, Caracas 1071, Venezuela

#### ABSTRACT

The territorial zoning system of Venezuela is based on a diverse set of categories called "Areas under Special Administration Regime" (ABRAE), which include protected areas. We discuss first how the Venezuelan government has requested to add a group of ABRAE as protected areas to the World Database on Protected Areas (WDPA), even though the main objectives of Venezuelan ABRAE are not aimed at protecting biodiversity. Second, we identify the weaknesses of the Venezuelan state in fulfilling the function of protecting biodiversity in territorial spaces as envisaged in the Convention on Biological Diversity, and particularly in Aichi target 11. Finally, we address the scant attention of the government of Venezuela to issues related to the governance of protected and conserved areas, and we specifically address Key Biodiversity Areas, and Other Effective Area-based Conservation Measures .

Key words: Venezuela, protected area system, WDPA, Aichi Target 11

#### PROTECTED AREAS CATEGORIES IN VENEZUELA

Since 1983, Venezuela has administered a complex system of areas for land use called Areas under Special Administration Regime (Spanish acronym ABRAE), which establishes guidelines for territorial spaces with different biophysical, environmental and socioeconomic characteristics. It is a system designed for the use, development and conservation of natural, historical and cultural resources, as well as for the protection of infrastructure and country borders, and for the productive development of rural areas and tourism. The ABRAE includes 25 categories. However, most ABRAE are not related to the protection of biodiversity or do not constitute protected areas according to the IUCN definition. For example, the ABRAE list includes Biosphere Reserves (oriented towards conservation and sustainable development), partially covered by national parks and natural monuments, which are protected areas. However, this is not the case for the so-called Critical Areas with Priority of Treatment that, in general, are of poor conservation value due to agricultural, livestock, agro-industrial, recreational, tourism, mining, urban and forestry activities. Another example of misclassification are the protective zones where industrial, mining and residential development are allowed, including the extraction of hydrocarbons. Most of the forest reserves included in the ABRAE are characterised by management practices that have fragmented forests and damaged ecosystems, while the areas declared as National Hydrological Reserves have lost almost all their forest cover, due to the intense exploitation to which they have been subjected (see García Peña & Silva Viera, 2014, for a complete list of the ABRAE with their definitions).

A conceptual comparison between the categories of ABRAE and the definition of protected areas by IUCN reveals the contradictions mentioned above. The inconsistency of classifying some ABRAE as protected areas, despite not fulfilling any of the functions defined by IUCN, has not only been maintained but even increased with the addition of two more categories not legally considered as ABRAE: coastal parks and wooded lots (Hernández, 2007). This situation regarding the reporting of the System of Protected Areas of Venezuela has prevailed for more than three decades, and constitutes the government's official vision that is publicly reflected in the profile of protected areas of Venezuela in the WDPA. However, the Fourth National Report to the Convention on Biological Diversity (Venezuela, 2011), published in advance of the National Strategy for Biodiversity (ENB), conveys the idea that all ABRAE are protected areas, also promoting the creation of other categories (not yet declared) of protected areas, such as Special Aquatic Habitats for Exploitation or Intensive Use, and Public Works Protection Areas. In this way, the Fifth National Report to the Convention on Biological Diversity (Venezuela, 2015) indicates that almost 50% of the national territory is included under protected natural areas. In fact, the current profile of protected areas of Venezuela shown by Protected Planet (WDPA) indicates a territorial coverage of marine and terrestrial protected areas that total 54 per cent (Figure 1). However, we estimate that this extension to the protected areas, for the same date of data download corresponds in reality to 23.27 per cent (Figure 2). It should be noted that the area of El Caura National Park, recently declared (2017), is not included here, since this new protected area has not been added to the WDPA list to date.

WDPA is the digital platform for global information on terrestrial and marine protected areas and is the product of an initiative called Protected Planet that results from a collaboration between UNEP, the World Conservation Monitoring Centre (WCMC) and IUCN: it constitutes the official global source on protected areas. The information compiled in the WDPA measures the progress of countries towards the achievement of Aichi Target 11 and, therefore, constitutes a means to evaluate



			(The Allower	42 T	
Terrain Satellite Juras			Dominica		
Nicaragua		distant	Barbados		
in Corte		Marticabot	Trindad		
Rica	Cartag		and Tobago		
	Panama	Venezuela (	Bolivarian		
		Repub	lic of)	Georgetown Paramaribo	
		Bogota	National Guyan		
		Colombia	for the	Suriname Parc amazonien	
		Parque -	Roraima	de Guyáne Terral Indigena Permanento	
Reserva Marina	5.00	National Natural Serrania de Alto Rio Negro	cional do nazonas	Turtucumaque O Mapbox © OpenS	treetMap Improv
The designations employe Nations concern	d and the presentatior ing the legal status of a	a of material on this map do not imply the any country, territory, city or area or of its	expression of any opinion authorities, or concerning	whatsoever on the part of the Secretariat of the Un the delimitation of its frontiers or boundaries.	ited
nber of Protected areas		Protected areas coverage	، (Ref1↓)		
51		Area terrestrial			
			406 704 1	2 017 760 km²	
56		54.0	Land Area Prote	cted Total Land Area	
30		coverage			
management effectiveness evalu	lations	1 29.0%		146,353.0 km <sup>2</sup>	
gons/Points ratio		with manageme	ent effectiveness evalua	ation Area Assessed	
9%	51%	😹 Area marine			
Jours	Points	7 00/	16 500 km <sup>2</sup>	473 325 km <sup>2</sup>	
nber of sources		5.0%	Marine Area Protecte	ed Total Marine Area	
nternational designations	4	coverage			
lational decignations	0	↓ 47.0%		7,760.0 km <sup>2</sup>	
ational designations	,	with manageme	ent effectiveness evalua	ation Area Assessed	
AL	13	Warning: These statistics might	differ from those repo	rted officially by countries due to difference	in ans used t
		measure terrestrial and marine	area of a country or ter	ritory.	
tional designations 🔼		Regional designations 💋		International designations 🔼	
10		•		7	
TO		U		3	
ategories 🗢	Count 🗢 🔄	Categories 🖨	Count 🖨	Categories 🗢	Count 🕻
ational Park	46			UNESCO-MAB Biosphere Reserve	-
orest Reserve	10			World Heritage Site (natural or mixed)	-
atural Monument	34			Ramsar Site, Wetland of International	
/ildlife Refuge	6			Importance	5
/ildlife Decense	5				
incure rreserve					
iosphere Keservé	2				
rotective zone	54				
otner Area	7				
orest Plot	8				
lydrological Reserve	10				
ederal Dependency	1				

IUCN Management categories 🔁		Governance types 🔼				
Management categories 🖨	Count 🖨	% 🖨	Name 🗢	Governance type 🗢	Count 🖨	% 🖨
П	43	17.13	Not Reported		251	100.0
III	33	13.15				
IV	8	3.19				
V	54	21.51				
VI	49	19.52				
Not Reported	61	24.3				
Not Applicable	3	1.2				

Figure 1. Venezuelan protected areas coverage Source: WDPA 18<sup>th</sup> April, 2019



Figure 2. Protected areas of Venezuela, 2014 (source: Eduardo Gómez Villegas )

the implementation of the commitments of the countries to the CBD; it is used to calculate indicators related to international processes (UNEP-WCMC, 2017), but it does not always consider the management status of the protected areas included in this database. Governments are responsible for reporting relevant information to be included in the WDPA (Lopoukhine & Ferreira de Sousa Diaz, 2012). It should be recalled that Aichi Target 11 recommends that "By 2020, at least 17 per cent of terrestrial and inland water areas and 10 per cent of coastal and marine areas, especially areas of particular importance for biodiversity and ecosystem services, are conserved through effectively and equitably managed, ecologically representative and well -connected systems of protected areas and other effective area-based conservation measures, and integrated into the wider landscape and seascape" (CBD, 2011).

#### Governance of protected areas, Other Effective Conservation Measures and Key Biodiversity Areas in Venezuela

Both IUCN and the CBD Secretariat recognise that biodiversity conservation is not and should not be limited to protected areas, because much biodiversity remains outside these areas (Lopoukhine & Ferreira de Sousa Diaz, 2012). According to Aichi 11 there is the possibility of also recognising "Other Effective Area-Based Conservation Measures" (OECMs). However, the definition of OECM has been ambiguous and subject to interpretation (Butchard et al., 2016)<sup>1</sup>. Such ambiguity makes it difficult to interpret which areas in Venezuela could achieve the status of OECMs. There are local examples and initiatives that could be considered as OECMs. These seek to conserve natural spaces under governance models of specific areas, where measures have been taken to protect species and (or) ecosystems through the management of areas and territories, managed by local communities in collaboration with NGOs, foundations and universities. As an example, land managed by indigenous peoples has been reported in the state of Amazonas (Gorzula, 1993). Another more recent local example includes a conservation area on Isla Margarita, established for the protection of endemic psittacine species (https:// www.worldlandtrust.org/what-we-do/where-we-work/ venezuela). There are other initiatives of private and community protected areas for the protection of species and ecosystems. However, in the Venezuelan case, the WDPA only includes those areas administered by the State, without considering community and privately managed areas.

Another concept of interest are Key Areas for Biodiversity (KBA), promoted by IUCN since 2004 (IUCN World Congress, Bangkok) in order to establish criteria to identify and highlight areas of high importance that contribute to the global protection of biodiversity. The identification of a site as a KBA is based on criteria and thresholds that are independent of the legal status of the protected area, so that each site must be evaluated according to relevant pre-established criteria, in the case that there is available data, for example based on the proportion of the global population of a species that faces a high risk of extinction, or of ecosystems or species threatened or geographically restricted or with high risks of extinction (IUCN, 2016). In Venezuela, this practice has not been applied, and the relevant information is yet to be published: knowledge about KBAs and the associated methodology is limited to a small circle of experts.

#### RECOMMENDATIONS

Our analysis indicates that the WDPA, on the basis of information generated by the government of Venezuela, includes management categories that do not meet the definitions established by IUCN and the CBD. Furthermore, Protected Planet seeks national data on protected areas that are compiled in collaboration with a wide variety of local and national governmental and non-governmental organisations; but in the case of Venezuela, this information was collected and provided exclusively by the Venezuelan government.

To avoid misreporting protected areas, we recommend that the responsible national authorities link the categories of protected areas with the concepts applied by the CBD and IUCN. Other management categories that do not agree with those of IUCN should not be included. On the other hand, it is necessary to report other private, community and indigenous OECMs. When the information reported to Protected Planet excludes conservation areas managed by communities or private organisations, important information on the real landscape of biodiversity management at the national level is lost. Therefore, it is essential to find ways to verify, rectify and complement the information provided to the WDPA. The situation in Venezuela may reflect similar cases of other countries with deficient information.

We have also detected a gap in documenting the representativeness of biodiversity in the national system of protected areas, characterised and hierarchised according to ecoregions, understood as biodiversity units at the regional (or continental) scale, and in the case of Venezuela at the national level. In this sense, in addition to the map of bioregions prepared by the government, a map of ecoregions conceptualised and validated by the national scientific community is required, in such a way that it offers a panorama adjusted to the reality of the distribution of landscapes, ecosystems and species.

Finally, it is important that the Venezuelan State make efforts to apply important concepts for the conservation of biodiversity, including OECMs, KBAs and governance schemes in protected areas.

#### ENDNOTES

<sup>1</sup> Guidance on the definition and recognition of OECMs was recently adopted by the Convention on Biological Diversity in CBD decision 14/8 on "protected areas and other effective area-based conservation measures", adopted by 196 Parties at the 14th Conference of the Parties (November 2018). Guidelines to support identification of OECMs will be published by IUCN during 2019.

#### **ABOUT THE AUTHORS**

**Rafael E. García Peña**, is an agricultural engineer and was Director of the Venezuelan Amazonas State protected areas (1991-1995); since then he has been a free-lance consultant for Latin-American Protected Areas, based in Germany.

**Lionel Hernández** is a forest engineer and Professor Emeritus of the Universidad Experimental de Guayana. He was Director of the Western Sector of Canaima National Park (1982-1983).

**María Isabel Silva Viera** is a forest engineer; and was Director of the protection and management programmes of Venezuela's protected area system (2002-2007); At present, She is in charge of Environmental Monitoring at the Ministry for Ecosocialism and Water.

**Yolinda Sumoza** is an agricultural engineer at the Ministry for Eco-Socialism and Water, and is State representative in Carabobo.

**Miyel Rodríguez** is a forest engineer and was Director of Venezuela's protected area system (1994-1995). He is Professor for Sustainable Environmental Management at Universidad Centro-Occidental (UCLA) and Vice President of the Venezuelan Water Association (AveAgua).

José Rafael García Acosta is an agricultural engineer and was founder and Director of the Venezuelan National Park and Natural Monument System (1958-1986). He has been awarded with the Order of Orange-Nassau (1975), the Fred M Packard Award (1982), and the Order of the Golden Ark (1984).

#### REFERENCES

- Butchard, S.H.M., Moreno Di Marco and Watson, J.E.M. (2016). Formulating Smart Commitments on Biodiversity: Lesson from the Aichi Targets. *Conservation Letters* 9(6), 457–468.
- CBD (2011). Strategic Plan for Biodiversity 2011-2020, including Aichi Biodiversity Targets. https://www.cbd.int/sp/
- García Peña, R.E. and Silva Viera, M.I. (2014). Las ABRAE versus las áreas protegidas en Venezuela. Copérnico VIII

(19), 27–39. https://www.academia.edu/8771169/%C3% 81reas protegidas en Venezuela

- Gorzula, S. (1993). Evaluación del estado actual de la fauna silvestre en el Estado Amazonas, Informe de consultoría para la Deutsche Gesellschaft für Technische Zusammenarbeit (GTZ). Projekt N° 91.2051.0.
- Hernández, F.A. (2007). Espacios naturales protegidos. In: P. Cunill (ed.) Geo Venezuela, Tomo 2: Medio Físico y Recursos Ambientales. Caracas, Venezuela: Fundación Polar-Ministerio de Ciencia y Tecnología / Fondo Nacional de Ciencia, Tecnología e Innovación.
- IUCN (2016). A Global Standard for the Identification of Key Biodiversity Areas, Version 1.0. Gland, Switzerland: IUCN.
- Lopoukhine, N. and Ferreira de Sousa Diaz, B. (2012). What does Target 11 really mean? *Parks* 18(1): 5–8.
- UNEP-WCMC (2017). World Database on Protected Areas User Manual 1.5. Cambridge, UK: UNEP-WCMC. http://wcmc.io/ WDPA\_Manual
- Venezuela (2011). Cuarto Informe Nacional Convenio de Diversidad Biológica. Caracas, Venezuela: Oficina Nacional de Diversidad Biológica. Ministerio del Poder Popular para el Ambiente. https://www.cbd.int/doc/world/ve/ve-nr-04-es.pdf
- Venezuela (2015). V Informe Nacional de Diversidad Biológica de la República Bolivariana de Venezuela. Caracas, Venezuela: Ministerio de Ecosocialismo y Aguas. Dirección General de Diversidad Biológica. https://www.cbd.int/doc/world/ve/ve-nr-05-es.pdf

#### RESUMEN

El sistema de ordenamiento territorial de Venezuela se fundamenta en un conjunto diverso de categorías denominadas Áreas Bajo Régimen de Administración Especial (ABRAE), entre las que se incluyen las áreas protegidas. En primer lugar discutimos el cómo el gobierno venezolano ha solicitado agregar un grupo de ABRAE como áreas protegidas en el World Database on Protected Areas (WDPA), a pesar de que los objetivos principales de las ABRAE venezolanas no están dirigidos a proteger la biodiversidad. En segundo lugar planteamos debilidades del estado venezolano para cumplir con la función de los espacios territoriales para la protección de la biodiversidad, vinculados con el Convenio sobre la Diversidad Biológica (CDB), particularmente con la Meta 11 de Aichi. Por último, abordamos la escasa atención que el gobierno de Venezuela le presta a temas relacionados con la gobernanza en áreas protegidas, específicamente con las Áreas Clave para la Biodiversidad, y con las Otras Medidas Eficaces de Conservación Basadas en Áreas.

#### RÉSUMÉ

Le système de zonage territorial du Venezuela repose sur un ensemble varié de catégories appelées Zones Sous Régime d'Administration Spéciale, qui comprennent des aires protégées. Nous discutons d'abord de la manière dont le gouvernement vénézuélien a demandé d'inclure un groupe de ces zones en tant qu'aires protégées dans la base de données mondiale sur les aires protégées, alors même que les objectifs principaux de ces zones au Venezuela ne visent pas à protéger la biodiversité. Deuxièmement, nous identifions les faiblesses de l'État vénézuélien dans l'accomplissement de la fonction de protection de la biodiversité dans les espaces territoriaux telle qu'envisagée dans la Convention sur la Diversité Biologique, notamment en ce qui concerne l'Objectif 11 d'Aichi. Enfin, nous abordons le peu d'attention que le gouvernement du Venezuela accorde aux questions liées à la gouvernance dans les aires protégées et conservées, et nous traitons en particulier les zones d'importance biologique et d'autres zones clés pour la biodiversité.



### **BOOK REVIEWS**

*The Future of Conservation in America: A Chart for Rough Waters* By Gary E. Machlis and Jonathan B Jarvis (2018) University of Chicago Press, Chicago and London. 96pp., \$14.00 ISBN-13 978-0-226-54205-8. Reviewed by Alison Woodley

#### THE FUTURE OF CONSERVATION IN AMERICA: A CHART FOR ROUGH WATERS BY GARY E. MACHLIS AND JONATHAN B JARVIS

The 2016 election of Donald Trump as American president left conservationists in that country alarmed and fearful about the future of their beloved natural and cultural heritage. Facing climate change denial and assaults on protected public lands and science-based decision-making, two American conservation leaders – Jon Jarvis, the former director of the National Parks Service under President Obama, and Gary Machlis, his chief science advisor – have weighed in with a small but powerful guide to navigating their country's current "rough waters".

Machlis and Jarvis don't shy away from the magnitude of the crisis their country faces. They outline in painstaking detail the risks and implications of the current Administration's policies and approaches, both to America's lands and waters, its cultural heritage, and its conservation movement. They highlight the critical importance of tracking and responding vigorously to this assault. And they explore the relationship between this attack on conservation and science, and the deeper root causes of the current "clash of forces dividing the nation", including economic inequality. Based on this analysis, they offer a path to finding a more unified and inclusive vision for conservation, and suggest 14 strategies that, applied together, could help American conservationists tackle the immediate threat, while also building a more resilient, powerful, inclusive and transformative conservation movement for the future.

Many of their suggested strategies would apply equally to conservation efforts in good times and in bad, in America and beyond. For example, as a long-time



Canadian conservation activist, I'm often involved in conversations about the need to broaden coalitions of support, to build greater diversity and inclusion in the movement, and to communicate based on a deeper understanding of people's values. However, tackling these big challenges often falls prey to urgent crises and immediate conservation opportunities. For those of us watching America from outside its borders, this book is a reminder of the critical importance of these long-term strategies to strengthen and broaden the conservation community so we can more effectively tackle the existential threat to our shared future from climate change and biodiversity loss, regardless of our political climate.

A core idea that runs throughout this book is the concept of "strategic intention". The authors propose that conservationists should more deliberately focus their actions not only on short-term objectives, but also on building a foundation and momentum for future conservation success. They highlight examples of how the US National Parks Service applied "strategic intention" to ensure a long-term legacy from the Service's Centennial celebrations in 2016, as well as to ensure that short term responses to disasters like the Deepwater Horizon spill, and Hurricane Sandy resulted in long-term gains. By embedding this simple but powerful concept into programs and organizational planning, the conservation community could start to build a more powerful and resilient movement for the future.

This short and easy-to-read book would be a valuable addition to any conservationist's bookshelf. Not only does it provide a strategic guide for more effective conservation action, it will also serve as a historical marker of turbulent times.

**Alison Woodley**, Canadian Parks and Wilderness Society (CPAWS) and IUCN World Commission on Protected Areas